These lecture notes are based on my course from summer semester 2020, though there are minor corrections and improvements as well as small changes in the numbering of equations. Typically, the proofs and calculations in the notes are a bit shorter than those given in the course. The drawings and many additional oral remarks from the lectures are omitted here. On the other hand, the notes contain very few proofs (of peripheral statements) not presented during the course. Occasionally I use the notation and definitions of my lecture notes Analysis 1–4 and Functional Analysis without further notice.

I want to thank Heiko Hoffmann for his support in the preparation of an earlier version of these notes.

Karlsruhe, July 4, 2020

Roland Schnaubelt
Contents

Chapter 1. Strongly continuous semigroups and their generators 1
  1.1. Basic concepts and properties 1
  1.2. Characterization of generators 15
  1.3. Dissipative operators 22
  1.4. Examples with the Laplacian 35

Chapter 2. The evolution equation and regularity 46
  2.1. Wellposedness and the inhomogeneous problem 46
  2.2. Mild solution and extrapolation 51
  2.3. Analytic semigroups and sectorial operators 56

Chapter 3. Perturbation and approximation 72
  3.1. Perturbation of generators 72
  3.2. The Trotter-Kato theorems 80
  3.3. Approximation formulas 86

Chapter 4. Long-term behavior 90
  4.1. Exponential stability and dichotomy 90
  4.2. Spectral mapping theorems 99

Chapter 5. Stability of positive semigroups 106

Bibliography 112
CHAPTER 1

Strongly continuous semigroups and their generators

Throughout, $X$ and $Y$ are non-zero complex Banach spaces, where we mostly write $\| \cdot \|$ instead of $\| \cdot \|_X$ etc. for their norms. The space of all bounded linear maps $T : X \to Y$ is denoted by $\mathcal{B}(X, Y)$ and endowed with the operator norm $\| T \|_{\mathcal{B}(X,Y)} = \| T \| = \sup_{x \neq 0} \| Tx \|/\|x\|$. We abbreviate $\mathcal{B}(X) = \mathcal{B}(X, X)$. Further, $X^*$ is the dual space of $X$ acting as $\langle x, x^* \rangle$, and $I$ is the identity map on $X$. For $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$, we denote $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} = [0, \infty)$, $\mathbb{R}_+ = (0, \infty)$, $\mathbb{R}_{\leq 0} = (-\infty, 0]$, $\mathbb{R}_- = (-\infty, 0)$, $\mathbb{C}_\omega = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \mid \Re \lambda > \omega \}$, $\mathbb{C}_+ = \mathbb{C}_0$, $\mathbb{C}_- = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \mid \Re \lambda < 0 \}$.

In this course we study linear evolution equations such as $u'(t) = Au(t)$, $t \geq 0$, $u(0) = u_0, \quad (EE)$ on a state space $X$ for given linear operators $A$ and initial values $u_0 \in D(A)$. (For a moment we assume that $A$ is closed and densely defined.) We are looking for the state $u(t) \in X$ describing the system governed by $A$ at time $t \geq 0$. A reasonable description of the system requires a unique solution $u$ of (EE) that continuously depends on $u_0$. In this case (EE) is called wellposed, cf. Definitions 1.10 and 2.1. We will show in Section 2.1 that wellposedness is equivalent to the fact that $A$ generates a $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ which yields the solutions via $u(t) = T(t)u_0$. In the next section we will define and investigate these concepts, before we characterize generators in Sections 1.2 and 1.3. In the final section the theory is then applied to the Laplacian.

Three intermezzi present basic notions and facts from the lecture notes [ST] on spectral theory, mostly without proofs. These are not needed later on.

1.1. Basic concepts and properties

We introduce the fundamental notions of these lectures.

Definition 1.1. A map $T(\cdot) : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \to \mathcal{B}(X)$ is called a strongly continuous operator semigroup or just $C_0$-semigroup if it satisfies

(a) $T(0) = I$ and $T(t+s) = T(t)T(s)$ for all $t, s \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0},$
(b) for each $x \in X$ the orbit $T(\cdot)x : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \to X; t \mapsto T(t)x$, is continuous.

Here, (a) is the semigroup property and (b) the strong continuity of $T(\cdot)$. The generator $A$ of $T(\cdot)$ is given by

$$D(A) = \left\{ x \in X \mid \text{the limit } \lim_{t \to 0, t \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \setminus \{0\}} \frac{1}{t}(T(t)x - x) \text{ exists} \right\},$$
$$Ax = \lim_{t \to 0, t \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \setminus \{0\}} \frac{1}{t}(T(t)x - x) \quad \text{for } x \in D(A).$$
If one replaces throughout $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ by $\mathbb{R}$, one obtains the concept of a $C_0$-group with generator $A$.

Observe that the domain of the generator is defined in a ‘maximal’ way, in the sense that it contains all elements for which the orbit is differentiable at $t = 0$.

In view of the introductory remarks, usually the generator is the given object and $T(\cdot)$ describes the unknown solution. We will first study basic properties of $C_0$-semigroups, starting with simple observations.

**Remark 1.2.**

a) Let $A$ generate a $C_0$-semigroup or a $C_0$-group. Then its domain $D(A)$ is a linear subspace and $A$ is a linear map.

b) Let $(T(t))_{t \in \mathbb{R}}$ be a $C_0$-group with generator $A$. Then its restriction $(T(t))_{t \geq 0}$ is a $C_0$-semigroup whose generator extends $A$. (Actually these two operators coincide by Theorem 1.30.)

c) Let $T(\cdot) : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \to \mathcal{B}(X)$ be a semigroup. We then have

$$T(t)T(s) = T(t + s) = T(s + t) = T(s)T(t),$$

$$T(nt) = T(\sum_{j=1}^{n} t) = \prod_{j=1}^{n} T(t) = T(t)^n$$

for all $t, s \geq 0$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$. If $T(\cdot)$ is even a group, these properties are valid for all $s, t \in \mathbb{R}$ and hence

$$T(t)T(-t) = T(0) = I = T(-t)T(t).$$

There thus exists the inverse $T(t)^{-1} = T(-t)$ for every $t \in \mathbb{R}$.

We next construct a $C_0$-group with a bounded generator, which is actually differentiable in operator norm. Conversely, an exercise shows that a $C_0$-semigroup with $T(t) \to I$ in $\mathcal{B}(X)$ as $t \to 0^+$ must have a bounded generator.

**Example 1.3.** Let $A \in \mathcal{B}(X)$. For $t \in \mathbb{C}$ with $|t| \leq b$ for some $b > 0$, the numbers

$$\left\| \frac{t^n}{n!} A^n \right\| \leq \frac{(b \|A\|)^n}{n!}$$

are summable in $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$. As in Lemma 4.23 of [FA], the series

$$T(t) = e^{tA} := \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^n}{n!} A^n, \quad t \in \mathbb{C},$$

thus converges in $\mathcal{B}(X)$ uniformly for $|t| \leq b$. In the same way one sees that

$$\frac{d}{dt} \sum_{n=0}^{N} \frac{t^n}{n!} A^n = \sum_{n=1}^{N} \frac{t^{n-1}}{(n-1)!} A^n = A \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} \frac{t^k}{k!} A^k$$

tends to $Ae^{tA}$ in $\mathcal{B}(X)$ as $N \to \infty$ locally uniformly in $t \in \mathbb{C}$. As in Analysis 1 one then shows that the map $\mathbb{C} \to \mathcal{B}(X); t \mapsto e^{tA}$, is continuously differentiable with derivative $Ae^{tA}$. Moreover, $(e^{tA})_{t \in \mathbb{C}}$ is a group (where one replaces $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ by $\mathbb{C}$ in Definition 1.1(a)).

The case of a matrix $A$ on $X = \mathbb{C}^m$ was treated in Section 4.4 of [A4].

$\diamondsuit$
For a semigroup a mild extra assumption implies its exponential boundedness. This assumption is satisfied if \(|T(t)\|\) is uniformly bounded on an interval \([0, b]\) with \(b > 0\) or if \(T(\cdot)\) is strongly continuous. (We need both cases below.) We set \(\omega_+ = \max\{\omega, 0\}\) and \(\omega_- = \max\{-\omega, 0\}\) for \(\omega \in \mathbb{R}\).

**Lemma 1.4.** Let \(T(\cdot) : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \to B(X)\) satisfy condition (a) in Definition 1.1 as well as \(\limsup_{t \to 0} \|T(t)x\| < \infty\) for all \(x \in X\). Then there are constants \(M \geq 1\) and \(\omega \in \mathbb{R}\) such that \(\|T(t)\| \leq Me^{\omega t}\) for all \(t \geq 0\).

**Proof.** 1) We first claim that there are constants \(c \geq 1\) and \(t_0 > 0\) with \(\|T(t)\| \leq c\) for all \(t \in [0, t_0]\). To show this claim, we suppose that there is a null sequence \((t_n)\) in \(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}\) such that \(\lim_{n \to \infty} \|T(t_n)\| = \infty\). The principle of uniform boundedness (Theorem 4.4 in [FA]) then yields a vector \(x \in X\) with \(\sup_n \|T(t_n)x\| = \infty\). There thus exists a subsequence satisfying \(\|T(t_n)\| \to \infty\) as \(j \to \infty\). This fact contradicts the assumption, and so the claim is true.

2) Let \(t \geq 0\). Then there are numbers \(n \in \mathbb{N}_0\) and \(\tau \in [0, t_0)\) such that \(t = nt_0 + \tau\). Take a real number \(\omega \geq t_0^{-1}\ln \|T(t_0)\|\) and set \(M = ce^{-\tau_0}\). (We remark that \(T(t_0)\) could be 0, then we put 1 = \(e^{-\infty}\).) We estimate

\[
\|T(t)\| = \|T(\tau)T(t_0)^n\| \leq c\|T(t_0)\|^n \leq ce^{nt_0}\omega = ce^{\omega t_0}e^{-\tau_0} \leq Me^{\omega t},
\]

using Remark 1.2. \(\Box\)

The above considerations lead to the following concept, which is discussed below and will be explored more thoroughly in Section 4.1.

**Definition 1.5.** Let \(T(\cdot)\) be a \(C_0\)-semigroup with generator \(A\). The quantity

\[\omega_0(T) = \omega_0(A) := \inf\{\omega \in \mathbb{R} \mid \exists M > 1 : \forall t \geq 0 : \|T(t)\| \leq Me^{\omega t}\} \in [\omega_0, \infty)\]

is called its (exponential) growth bound. If \(\sup_{t \geq 0} \|T(t)\| < \infty\), then \(T(\cdot)\) is bounded. (Similarly one defines \(\omega_0(f) \in [\omega_0, +\infty]\) for any map \(f : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \to Y\).)

**Remark 1.6.** Let \(T(\cdot)\) be a \(C_0\)-semigroup.

a) Lemma 1.4 implies that \(\omega_0(T) < \infty\).

b) There are \(C_0\)-semigroups with \(\omega_0(T) = \omega_0, see Example 1.9.

c) In general the infimum in Definition 1.5 is not a minimum. For instance, let \(X = \mathbb{C}^2\) be endowed with the 1-norm \(\|\cdot\|_1\) and \(A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\). We then have \(T(t) = e^{tA} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 + \frac{1}{2}t^2 & t \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\) and \(\|T(t)\| = 1 + t\) for \(t \geq 0\). As a result,

\[M_\varepsilon := \sup_{t \geq 0} e^{-\varepsilon t}\|T(t)\| = \sup_{t \geq 0}(1 + t)e^{-\varepsilon t} = \varepsilon^{-1} e^{-\varepsilon -1}\]

tends to infinity as \(\varepsilon \to 0^+\).

d) Let \(X = \mathbb{C}^m\) and \(A \in \mathbb{C}^{m \times m}\). As in Satz 4.19 of [A4] one sees that

\[\omega_0(A) = s(A) := \max\{\Re \lambda_j \mid \lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_k \text{ are eigenvalues of } A\}.
\]

This result extends to bounded \(A\) if \(\dim X = \infty\), cf. Example 5.4 of [ST]. Every generator satisfies \(\omega_0(A) \geq s(A)\) by Proposition 1.21. However, the converse inequality is much more important since \(A\) is the given object and \(T(t)\) the unknown solution. In Chapter 4 we will discuss this point in detail.

Similarly, the semigroup \(e^{tA}\) is bounded if and only if \(s(A) \leq 0\) and all eigenvalues of \(A\) on \(i\mathbb{R}\) are semi-simple. This indicates that boundedness of \(C_0\)-semigroups is a more subtle property. \(\diamondsuit\)
The next auxiliary result will often be used to check strong continuity.

**Lemma 1.7.** Let \( T(\cdot) : \mathbb{R}_+ \to \mathcal{B}(X) \) be a map satisfying condition (a) in Definition 1.1. Then the following assertions are equivalent.

- a) \( T(\cdot) \) is strongly continuous (and thus a \( C_0 \)-semigroup).
- b) \( T(t)x \to x \) in \( X \) as \( t \to 0^+ \) for all \( x \in X \).
- c) There are numbers \( c, t_0 > 0 \) and a dense subspace \( D \) of \( X \) such that \( \| T(t) \| \leq c \) and \( T(t)x \to x \) in \( X \) as \( t \to 0^+ \) for all \( t \in [0, t_0] \) and \( x \in D \).

For groups one has analogous equivalences.

**Proof.** Assertion c) follows from a) because of Lemma 1.4, and b) from c) by Lemma 4.10 in [FA].

Let statement b) be true. Take \( x \in X \) and \( t > 0 \). For \( h > 0 \), the semigroup property and b) imply the limit

\[
\| T(t + h)x - T(t)x \| = \| T(t)(T(h)x - x) \| \leq \| T(t) \| \| T(h)x - x \| \to 0
\]

as \( h \to 0^+ \). Let \( h \in (-t, 0) \). Lemma 1.4 yields the bound

\[
\| T(t + h) \| \leq M e^{\omega(t + h)} \leq M e^{\omega(t)}
\]

for some constants \( M \geq 1 \) and \( \omega \in \mathbb{R} \). We then derive

\[
\| T(t + h)x - T(t)x \| \leq \| T(t + h) \| \| x - T(-h)x \| \leq M e^{\omega(-h)} \| x - T(-h)x \| \to 0
\]

as \( h \to 0^- \), so that a) is true. The final assertion is shown similarly. \( \square \)

**Remark 1.8.** In the above lemma the implication ‘c) \( \Rightarrow \) a)’ can fail if one omits the boundedness assumption, cf. Exercise I.5.9(4) in [EN].

We now examine translation semigroups, which are easy to grasp and still illustrate many of the basic features of \( C_0 \)-semigroups. Another important class of simple examples are multiplication semigroups as discussed in the exercises.

We recall that \( \text{supp}(f) \) is the support of a function \( f : M \to Y \) on a metric space \( M \); i.e., the closure in \( M \) of the set \( \{ s \in M \mid f(s) \neq 0 \} \).

**Example 1.9.** a) Let \( X = C_0(\mathbb{R}) := \{ f \in C(\mathbb{R}) \mid f(s) \to 0 \text{ as } |s| \to \infty \} \), \( f \in X \), and \( t, r, s \in \mathbb{R} \). We define the translations

\[
(T(t)f)(s) = f(s + t).
\]

They shift the graph of \( f \) to the left if \( t > 0 \), since \( (T(t)f)(s) \) is equal to the value of \( f \) at \( s + t > s \). Clearly, \( T(0) = I \) and \( T(t) \) is a linear isometry on \( X \) so that \( \| T(t) \| = 1 \). We further obtain \( T(t)T(r) = T(t + r) \) noting

\[
(T(t)T(r)f)(s) = (T(r)f)(s + t) = f(r + s + t) = (T(t + r)f)(s).
\]

We claim that \( C_c(\mathbb{R}) = \{ f \in C(\mathbb{R}) \mid \text{supp}(f) \text{ is compact} \} \) is dense in \( C_0(\mathbb{R}) \). Indeed, let \( f \in C_0(\mathbb{R}) \) and choose cut-off functions \( \varphi_n \in C_c(\mathbb{R}) \) satisfying \( \varphi_n = 1 \) on \( [-n, n] \) and \( 0 \leq \varphi_n \leq 1 \). Then the maps \( \varphi_n f \) belong to \( C_c(\mathbb{R}) \) and

\[
\| f - \varphi_n f \|_{\infty} \leq \sup_{|s| \geq n} |(1 - \varphi_n(s))f(s)| \leq \sup_{|s| \geq n} |f(s)|
\]

tends to 0 as \( n \to \infty \).
Take \( f \in C_c(\mathbb{R}) \) and a number \( a > 0 \) such that \( \text{supp} f \subseteq [-a, a] \). If \( |s| > a + 1 \) and \( |t| \leq 1 \), we have \( |s + t| > a \) and thus \( f(s + t) = 0 \); i.e., \( \text{supp} T(t)f \) is contained in \([-a - 1, a + 1]\) for all \( t \in [-1, 1] \). It follows

\[
\|T(t)f - f\|_\infty \leq \sup_{|s| \leq a+1} |f(s + t) - f(s)| \to 0
\]
as \( t \to 0 \), since \( f \) is uniformly continuous on \([-a - 1, a + 1]\). Lemma 1.7 then implies that \( T(\cdot) \) is a \( C_0 \)-group.

Similarly, one shows that \( T(\cdot) \) is an (isometric) \( C_0 \)-group on \( X = L^p(\mathbb{R}) \) with \( 1 \leq p < \infty \), see Example 4.12 in [FA].

In contrast to these results, \( T(\cdot) \) is not strongly continuous on \( X = L^\infty(\mathbb{R}) \). Indeed, consider \( f = 1_{[0,1]} \) and observe that

\[
T(t)f(s) = 1_{[0,1]}(s + t) = \begin{cases} 1, & s + t \in [0,1] \\ 0, & \text{else} \end{cases} = 1_{[-t,1-t]}(s)
\]
for \( s, t \in \mathbb{R} \). Thus, \( \|T(t)f - f\|_\infty = 1 \) for every \( t \neq 0 \).

In addition, \( T(\cdot) \) is not continuous as a \( \mathcal{B}(X) \)-valued function for \( X = C_0(\mathbb{R}) \) (and neither for \( X = L^p(\mathbb{R}) \) by Example 4.12 in [FA]). In fact, pick functions \( f_n \in C_c(\mathbb{R}) \) with \( 0 \leq f_n \leq 1 \), \( f_n(n) = 1 \), and \( \text{supp} f_n \subseteq (n - \frac{2}{n}, n + \frac{1}{n}) \) for \( n \in \mathbb{N} \). Then the support of \( T(\frac{n}{n^2})f_n \) is contained in \((n - \frac{2}{n}, n - \frac{1}{n})\), implying

\[
\|T(\frac{n}{n^2}) - I\| \geq \|T(\frac{n}{n^2})f_n - f_n\|_\infty = 1 \quad \text{for all } n \in \mathbb{N}.
\]

b) For an interval that is bounded from above, one has to prescribe the behavior of the left translation at the right boundary point. Here we simply prescribe the value 0. Let \( X = C_0([0,1]) := \{ f \in C([0,1]) \mid \lim_{s \to 1} f(s) = 0 \} \) be endowed with the supremum norm, which is a Banach space by Example 1.14 in [FA]. Let \( t, r \geq 0 \), \( f \in X \), and \( s \in [0,1) \). We define

\[
(T(t)f)(s) := \begin{cases} f(s + t), & s + t < 1 \\ 0, & s + t \geq 1 \end{cases}.
\]

Since \( f(s + t) \to 0 \) as \( s \to 1 - t \) if \( t < 1 \), the function \( T(t)f \) belongs to \( X \). Clearly, \( T(t) \) is linear on \( X \) and \( \|T(t)\| \leq 1 \). We stress that \( T(t) = 0 \) whenever \( t \geq 1 \). (One says that \( T(\cdot) \) is nilpotent.) As a consequence, \( \omega_0(T) = -\infty \) and \( T(\cdot) \) cannot be extended a group in view of Remark 1.2. We next compute

\[
(T(t)T(r)f)(s) = \begin{cases} (T(r)f)(s + t), & s < 1 - t, \\ 0, & s \geq 1 - t \end{cases}
= \begin{cases} f(s + t + r), & s < 1 - t, \\ 0, & s + t < 1 - r, \end{cases}
= (T(t + r)f)(s).
\]

Hence, \( T(\cdot) \) is a semigroup.

As in part a) or in Example 1.19 of [FA], one sees that

\[
C_c([0,1)) := \{ f \in C([0,1)) \mid \exists b_f \in (0,1) : \text{supp} f \subseteq [0, b_f]\}
\]
is a dense subspace of $X$. For $f \in C_c([0,1))$ and $t \in (0,1-b_f)$ we compute
\[
T(t)f(s) - f(s) = \begin{cases} f(s+t) - f(s), & \text{if } s \in [0,1-t), \\ 0, & \text{if } s \in [1-t,1) \subseteq [b_f,1), \end{cases}
\]
and deduce $\lim_{t \to 0} \|T(t)f - f\|_\infty = 0$ using the uniform continuity of $f$. According to Lemma 1.7, $T(\cdot)$ is a $C_0$-semigroup on $X$. 

We now introduce a solution concept for the problem (EE). Different ones will be discussed in Section 2.2.

**Definition 1.10.** Let $A$ be a linear operator on $X$ with domain $D(A)$ and let $x \in D(A)$. A function $u : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \to X$ solves the homogeneous evolution equation (or Cauchy problem)
\[
u'(t) = Au(t), \quad t \geq 0, \quad u(0) = x,
\]
if $u$ belongs to $C^1(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, X)$ and satisfies $u(t) \in D(A)$ and (1.1) for all $t \geq 0$.

The next result provides the fundamental regularity properties of $C_0$-semigroups. Recall the domain $D(A)$ was ‘maximally’ defined as the set of all initial values for which the orbit is differentiable at $t = 0$. We now use the semigroup law to transfer this property to later times. The crucial invariance of the domain under the semigroup then directly follows from its definition.

**Proposition 1.11.** Let $A$ generate the $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ and $x \in D(A)$. Then $T(t)x$ belongs to $D(A)$, $T(\cdot)x$ to $C^1(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, X)$, and we have
\[
\frac{d}{dt}T(t)x = AT(t)x = T(t)Ax \quad \text{for all } t \geq 0.
\]
Moreover, the function $u = T(\cdot)x$ is the only solution of (1.1).

**Proof.** 1) Let $t > 0, h > 0$ and $x \in D(A)$. Remark 1.2 and the continuity of $T(t)$ then imply the convergence
\[
\frac{1}{h}(T(h) - I)T(t)x = T(t)\frac{1}{h}(T(h)x - x) \longrightarrow T(t)Ax
\]
as $h \to 0$. By Definition 1.1 of the generator, the vector $T(t)x$ thus belongs to $D(A)$ and satisfies $AT(t)x = T(t)Ax$. Next, let $0 < h < t$. We then compute
\[
\frac{1}{h}(T(t-h)x - T(t)x) = T(t-h)\frac{1}{h}(T(h)x - x) \longrightarrow T(t)Ax
\]
as $h \to 0$, by means of Lemma 1.13 below (with $S(\tau,\sigma) = T(\tau - \sigma)$). Together we have shown that the orbit $u = T(\cdot)x$ has the derivative $AT(\cdot)x$. Since $T(\cdot)Ax$ is continuous, $u$ is contained in $C^1(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, X)$. Summing up, $u$ solves (1.1).

2) Let $v$ be another solution of (1.1). Take $t > 0$ and set $w(s) = T(t-s)v(s)$ for $s \in [0,t]$. Let $h \in [-s,t-s] \setminus \{0\}$. We write
\[
\frac{1}{h}(w(s+h) - w(s)) = T(t-s-h)\frac{1}{h}(v(s+h) - v(s)) - \frac{1}{h}(T(t-s-h) - T(t-s))v(s).
\]
Using $v \in C^1$, Lemma 1.13, $v(s) \in D(A)$ and the first step, we infer that $w$ is differentiable with derivative
\[
w'(s) = T(t-s)v'(s) - T(t-s)Av(s) = 0,
\]
where the last equality follows from (1.1) for $v$. Hence, for each $x^* \in X^*$ the scalar function $\langle w(\cdot), x^* \rangle$ is differentiable with vanishing derivative and thus constant, which leads to the equality

$$\langle T(t)x, x^* \rangle = \langle w(0), x^* \rangle = \langle w(t), x^* \rangle = \langle v(t), x^* \rangle$$

for all $t > 0$. The Hahn-Banach theorem (Corollary 5.10 of [FA]) now yields $T(\cdot)x = v$ as asserted. □

**Remark 1.12.** Let $f \in C_0(\mathbb{R}) \setminus C^1(\mathbb{R})$. Then the orbit $T(\cdot)f = f(\cdot + t)$ of the translation semigroup on $C_0(\mathbb{R})$ is not differentiable (cf. Example 1.9). ◊

The following simple lemma is used in the above proof and also later on.

**Lemma 1.13.** Let $D = \{(\tau, \sigma) \mid a \leq \sigma \leq \tau \leq b\}$ for some $a < b$ in $\mathbb{R}$, $S : D \to B(X)$ be strongly continuous, and $f$ be contained in $C([a, b], X)$. Then the function $g : D \to X; g(\tau, \sigma) = S(\tau, \sigma)f(\sigma)$, is also continuous.

**Proof.** Observe that $\sup_{(\tau, \sigma) \in D} \|S(\tau, \sigma)x\| < \infty$ for every $x \in X$ by continuity. The uniform boundedness principle thus says that $c := \sup_D \|S(\tau, \sigma)\|$ is finite. For $(t, s), (\tau, \sigma) \in D$ we then obtain

$$\|S(t, s)f(s) - S(\tau, \sigma)f(\sigma)\| \leq \|(S(t, s) - S(\tau, \sigma))f(s)\| + c\|f(s) - f(\sigma)\|.$$  

The right-hand side of this inequality tends to 0 as $(\tau, \sigma) \to (t, s)$. □

**Remark 1.14.** Let $x_n \to x$ in $X$ and $T_n \to T$ strongly in $B(X, Y)$. As in the proof of Lemma 1.13 one then shows that $T_nx_n \to Tx$ in $Y$ as $n \to \infty$. ◊

**Intermezzo 1: Closed operators, spectrum, and $X$-valued Riemann integrals.** As noted above, generators of $C_0$-semigroups are unbounded unless the semigroup is continuous in $B(X)$. However, we will see in Proposition 1.20 that they still respect limits to some extent. We introduce the relevant concepts here.

Let $D(A) \subseteq X$ be a linear subspace and $A : D(A) \to X$ be linear. We often endow $D(A)$ with the graph norm $\|x\|_A := \|x\| + \|Ax\|$. We write $[D(A)], X_1^A, X_1$ for $(D(A), \|\cdot\|_A)$ and also $\|\cdot\|_1$ instead of $\|\cdot\|_A$. Observe that $[D(A)]$ is a normed vector space and that $A$ is an element of $B([D(A)], X)$. Moreover, a function $f \in C([a, b], X)$ belongs to $C([a, b], [D(A)])$ if and only if $f$ takes values in $D(A)$ and $Af : [a, b] \to X$ is continuous.

The operator $A$ is called closed if for every sequence $(x_n)$ in $D(A)$ possessing the limits

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} x_n = x \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{n \to \infty} Ax_n = y \quad \text{in} \ X$$

we obtain

$$x \in D(A) \quad \text{and} \quad Ax = y.$$  

See Chapter 1 in [ST] for more details. We start with prototypical examples.

**Example 1.15.** a) Every operator $A \in B(X)$ with $D(A) = X$ is closed, since here $Ax_n \to Ax$ if $x_n \to x$ in $X$ as $n \to \infty$.

b) Let $X = C([0, 1])$ and $Af = f'$ with $D(A) = C^1([0, 1])$. Let $(f_n)$ be a sequence in $D(A)$ such that $(f_n)$ and $(f'_n)$ converge in $X$ to $f$ and $g$, respectively. By Analysis 1, the limit $f$ then belongs to $C^1([0, 1])$ and satisfies $f' = g$; i.e., $A$ is
closed. Next, consider the map \( A_0f = f' \) with \( D(A_0) = \{ f \in C^1([0, 1]) \mid f'(0) = 0 \} \). Let \((f_n)\) be a sequence in \( D(A) \) such that \( f_n \to f \) and \( f'_n \to g \) in \( X \) as \( n \to \infty \). We again obtain \( f \in C^1([0, 1]) \) and \( f' = g \). It further follows \( f'_n(0) = g(0) = \lim_{n \to \infty} f'_n(0) = 0 \), so that also \( A_0 \) is closed. \( \diamond \)

Before we discuss basic properties of closed operators, we define the Riemann integral for \( X \)-valued functions. Let \( a < b \) be real numbers. A (tagged) partition \( Z \) of the interval \([a, b]\) is a finite set of numbers \( a = t_0 < t_1 < \ldots < t_m = b \) together with a finite sequence \((\tau_k)_{k=1}^m\) satisfying \( t_{k-1} \leq \tau_k \leq t_k \) for all \( k \in \{1, \ldots, m\} \). Set \( \delta(Z) = \max_{k \in \{1, \ldots, m\}} (t_k - t_{k-1}) \). For a function \( f \in C([a, b], X) \) and a partition \( Z \) we define the Riemann sum by

\[
S(f, Z) = \sum_{k=1}^m f(\tau_k)(t_k - t_{k-1}) \in X.
\]

As for real valued functions it can be shown that for any sequence \((Z_n)\) of (tagged) partitions with \( \lim_{n \to \infty} \delta(Z_n) = 0 \) the sequence \((S(f, Z_n))_n\) converges in \( X \) and that the limit \( J \) does not depend on the choice of such \((Z_n)\). In this sense, we say that \( S(f, Z) \) converges in \( X \) to \( J \) as \( \delta(Z) \to 0 \). The \textit{Riemann integral} is now defined as

\[
\int_a^b f(t) \, dt = \lim_{\delta(Z) \to 0} S(f, Z).
\]

We also set \( \int_a^b f(t) \, dt = -\int_b^a f(t) \, dt \). As in the real-valued case, one shows the basic properties the integral (except for monotony), e.g., linearity, additivity and validity of the standard estimate. Moreover, the same definition and results work for piecewise continuous functions. The fundamental theorem of calculus and a result on dominated convergence are shown in the next remark.

**Remark 1.16.** For a linear operator \( A \) in \( X \) the following assertions hold.

a) The operator \( A \) is closed if and only if its \textit{graph} \( \text{Gr}(A) = \{(x, Ax) \mid x \in D(A)\} \) is closed in \( X \times X \) (endowed with the product metric) if and only if \( D(A) \) is a Banach space with respect to the graph norm \( \| \cdot \|_A \).

b) If \( A \) is closed with \( D(A) = X \), then \( A \) is continuous (\textit{closed graph theorem}).

c) Let \( A \) be injective. Set \( D(A^{-1}) := \text{R}(A) = \{ Ax \mid x \in D(A) \} \). Then \( A \) is closed if and only if \( A^{-1} \) is closed.

d) Let \( A \) be closed and \( f \in C([a, b], [D(A)]) \). We then have

\[
\int_a^b f(t) \, dt \in D(A) \quad \text{and} \quad A \int_a^b f(t) \, dt = \int_a^b Af(t) \, dt.
\]

An analogous result is valid for piecewise continuous \( f \) and \( Af \). Moreover, \([D(A)]\) is just \( X \) (with an equivalent norm) if \( A \in \mathcal{B}(X) \) so that we can interchange the Riemann-integral and bounded linear operators.

e) Let \( f_n, f \in C([a, b], X) \) for \( n \in \mathbb{N} \) such that \( f_n(s) \to f(s) \) in \( X \) as \( n \to \infty \) for each \( s \in [a, b] \) and \( \|f_n(\cdot)\| \leq \varphi \) for a map \( \varphi \in L^1([a, b]) \) and all \( n \in \mathbb{N} \). Then there exists the limit

\[
\lim_{n \to \infty} \int_a^b f_n(s) \, ds = \int_a^b f(s) \, ds.
\]
The assumptions are satisfied if \( f_n \rightarrow f \) uniformly as \( n \rightarrow \infty \), of course.

f) For \( f \in C([a, b], X) \), the function
\[
[a, b] \rightarrow X; \quad t \mapsto \int_a^t f(s) \, ds,
\]
is continuously differentiable with derivative
\[
\frac{d}{dt} \int_a^t f(s) \, ds = f(t) \tag{1.2}
\]
for each \( t \in [a, b] \). For \( g \in C^1([a, b], X) \), we have
\[
\int_a^b g'(s) \, ds = g(b) - g(a). \tag{1.3}
\]

\textbf{Proof.} Parts a) and c) are shown in Lemma 1.4 of \cite{ST}, and b) is established in Theorem 1.5 of \cite{ST}.

To prove d), let \( f \) be as in the statement. Note that for each partition \( Z \) of \([a, b]\) the Riemann sum \( S(f, Z) \) belongs to \( D(A) \). We further obtain
\[
AS(f, Z) = \sum_{k=1}^m (Af)(\tau_k)(t_k - t_{k-1}) = S(Af, Z) \rightarrow \int_a^b Af(t) \, dt
\]
as \( \delta(Z) \rightarrow 0 \), because \( Af \) is continuous. Assertion d) now follows from the closedness of \( A \).

Dominated convergence with majorant \( \|f\|_\infty 1 + \varphi \) yields claim e) since
\[
\left\| \int_a^b f(s) \, ds - \int_a^b f_n(s) \, ds \right\| \leq \int_a^b \|f(s) - f_n(s)\| \, ds.
\]

For f), take \( t \in [a, b] \) and \( h \neq 0 \) such that \( t + h \in [a, b] \). We can then estimate
\[
\left\| \frac{1}{h} \left( \int_a^{t+h} f(s) \, ds - \int_a^t f(s) \, ds \right) - f(t) \right\| = \left\| \frac{1}{h} \int_t^{t+h} (f(s) - f(t)) \, ds \right\| \leq \sup_{|s-t| \leq h} \|f(s) - f(t)\| \rightarrow 0 \tag{1.4}
\]
as \( h \rightarrow 0 \). So we have shown (1.2). In the proof of Proposition 1.11 we have seen that a function in \( C^1([a, b]) \) is constant if its derivative vanishes. Equation (1.3) can thus be deduced from (1.2) as in Analysis 1.

Let \( f_n, f, \) and \( g \) be as in part g). Take \( a \in J \). Formula (1.3) yields the identity
\[
f_n(t) = f_n(a) + \int_a^t f'_n(s) \, ds
\]
for all \( t \in J \). Letting \( n \rightarrow 0 \), from e) we deduce
\[
f(t) = f(a) + \int_a^t g(s) \, ds
\]
for all \( t \in J \). Due to (1.2), the map \( f \) belongs \( C^1(J, X) \) and satisfies \( f' = g \). \( \Box \)
For a closed operator $A$ we define its resolvent set

$$\rho(A) = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \mid \lambda I - A : D(A) \to X \text{ is bijective} \}.$$ 

If $\lambda \in \rho(A)$, we write $R(\lambda, A)$ for $(\lambda I - A)^{-1}$ and call it resolvent. The spectrum of $A$ is the set

$$\sigma(A) = \mathbb{C} \setminus \rho(A).$$

The point spectrum

$$\sigma_p(A) = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \mid \exists v \in D(A) \setminus \{0\} \text{ with } Av = \lambda v \}$$

is a subset of $\sigma(A)$ which can be empty if $\dim X = \infty$, see Example 1.25 in [ST]. We discuss basic properties of spectrum and resolvent which will be used throughout these lectures.

**Remark 1.17.**

a) Let $A$ be closed and $\lambda \in \rho(A)$. It is easy to check that also the operator $\lambda I - A$ is closed (see Proposition 1.7 in [ST]), and hence $R(\lambda, A)$ is closed by Remark 1.16 c). Assertion d) of this remark then shows the closedness of $R(\lambda, A)$.

b) Let $A$ be a linear operator and $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ such that $\lambda I - A : D(A) \to X$ is bijective with bounded inverse. Then $(\lambda I - A)^{-1}$ is closed, so that Remark 1.16 c) implies the closedness of $A$. In particular, $\lambda$ belongs to $\rho(A)$.

c) We list several important statements of Theorem 1.13 in [ST]. The set $\rho(A)$ is open and so $\sigma(A)$ is closed. More precisely, for $\lambda \in \rho(A)$ all $\mu$ with $|\mu - \lambda| < 1/\|R(\lambda, A)\|$ are also contained in $\rho(A)$ and we have the power series

$$R(\mu, A) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (\lambda - \mu)^n R(\lambda, A)^{n+1}. \quad (1.5)$$

This series converges absolutely in $\mathcal{B}(X, D(A))$ and uniformly for $\mu$ with $|\mu - \lambda| \leq \delta/\|R(\lambda, A)\|$ and $\delta \in (0, 1)$, where one also obtains the inequality $\|R(\mu, A)\| \leq \|R(\lambda, A)\|/(1 - \delta)$. The resolvent has the derivatives

$$\left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} \right)^n R(\lambda, A) = (-1)^n n! R(\lambda, A)^{n+1} \quad (1.6)$$

for all $\lambda \in \rho(A)$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$. It further fulfills the resolvent equation

$$R(\mu, A) - R(\lambda, A) = (\lambda - \mu) R(\lambda, A) R(\mu, A) = (\lambda - \mu) R(\mu, A) R(\lambda, A). \quad (1.7)$$

d) Let $T \in \mathcal{B}(X)$. By Theorem 1.16 of [ST], the spectrum $\sigma(T)$ is even compact and always non-empty, and the spectral radius of $T$ is given by

$$r(T) := \max \{ |\lambda| \mid \lambda \in \sigma(T) \} = \inf_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \| T^n \|^{\frac{1}{n}} = \lim_{n \to \infty} \| T^n \|^{\frac{1}{n}}.$$

e) Example 1.22 provides closed operators $A$ with $\sigma(A) = \emptyset$ or $\sigma(A) = \mathbb{C}$. \end{proof}

This ends the intermezzo, and we come back to the investigation of $C_0$-semigroups. We first note a simple rescaling lemma which is often used to simplify the reasoning.

**Lemma 1.18.** Let $T(\cdot)$ be a $C_0$-semigroup with generator $A$, $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$, and $a > 0$. Set $S(t) = e^{\lambda t} T(at)$ for $t \geq 0$. Then $S(\cdot)$ is a $C_0$-semigroup and has the generator $B = \lambda I + aA$ with $D(B) = D(A)$. 

PROOF. For $t, s \geq 0$ we compute $S(t + s) = e^{\lambda t}e^{\lambda s}T(at)T(as) = S(t)S(s)$.
The strong continuity of $S(\cdot)$ and the identity $S(0) = I$ are clear. Let $B$ be the generator of $S(\cdot)$. Because of

$$\frac{1}{t}(S(t)x - x) = ae^{\lambda t} \frac{1}{at}(T(at)x - x) + \frac{1}{t}(e^{\lambda t} - 1)x,$$

$x$ belongs to $D(B)$ if and only if $x \in D(A)$, and we then have $Bx = aAx + \lambda x$. □

Below we will derive key features of generators, which are consequences of the next fundamental lemma.

**Lemma 1.19.** Let $T(\cdot)$ be a $C_0$-semigroup with generator $A$, $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$, $t > 0$, and $x \in X$. Then the integral $\int_0^t e^{-\lambda s}T(s)x\,ds$ belongs to $D(A)$ and satisfies

$$e^{-\lambda t}T(t)x - x = (A - \lambda I)\int_0^t e^{-\lambda s}T(s)x\,ds. \quad (1.8)$$

Furthermore, for $x \in D(A)$ we have

$$e^{-\lambda t}T(t)x - x = \int_0^t e^{-\lambda s}T(s)(A - \lambda I)x\,ds. \quad (1.9)$$

**Proof.** We only consider $\lambda = 0$ since the general case then follows by means of Lemma 1.18. For $h > 0$ and $t > 0$ we compute

$$\frac{1}{h}(T(h) - I)\int_0^t T(s)x\,ds = \frac{1}{h}\left(\int_0^t T(s + h)x\,ds - \int_0^t T(s)x\,ds\right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{h}\left(\int_0^{t+h} T(r)x\,dr - \int_0^t T(s)x\,ds\right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{h}\int_0^{t+h} T(s)x\,ds - \frac{1}{h}\int_0^h T(s)x\,ds, \quad (1.10)$$

where we substituted $r = s + h$. The last line tends to $T(t)x - x$ as $h \to 0$ due to the continuity of the orbits and (1.4). By the definition of the generator, this means that $\int_0^t T(s)x\,ds$ is an element of $D(A)$ and (1.8) holds. Let $x \in D(A)$. Proposition 1.11 then shows that $T(\cdot)x$ belongs to $C^1([R_0, X)$ with derivative $\frac{d}{dt}T(\cdot)x = T(\cdot)Ax$. Hence, formula (1.9) follows from (1.3). □

We can now show basic properties of generators. Recall that they commute with their semigroup by Proposition 1.11.

**Proposition 1.20.** Let $A$ generate a $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$. Then $A$ is closed and densely defined. Moreover, $T(\cdot)$ is the only $C_0$-semigroup generated by $A$. If $\lambda \in \rho(A)$, then we have $R(\lambda, A)T(t) = T(t)R(\lambda, A)$ for all $t \geq 0$.

**Proof.** 1) To show closedness, we take a sequence $(x_n)$ in $D(A)$ with limit $x$ in $X$ such that $(Ax_n)$ converges to some $y$ in $X$. Equation (1.9) yields

$$\frac{1}{t}(T(t)x_n - x_n) = \frac{1}{t}\int_0^t T(s)Ax_n\,ds$$

for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $t > 0$. Letting $n \to \infty$, we infer

$$\frac{1}{t}(T(t)x - x) = \frac{1}{t}\int_0^t T(s)y\,ds$$
by means of Remark 1.16 c). Because of (1.4), the right-hand side tends to \( y \) as \( t \to 0 \). This exactly means that \( x \) belongs \( D(A) \) and \( Ax = y \); i.e., \( A \) is closed.

2) Let \( x \in X \). For \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), we define the vector

\[
x_n = n \int_0^1 T(s)x \, ds
\]

which belongs to \( D(A) \) by Lemma 1.19. Formula (1.4) shows that \( (x_n) \) tends to \( x \), and hence the domain \( D(A) \) is dense in \( X \).

3) Let \( A \) generate another \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( S(\cdot) \). The function \( S(\cdot)x \) then solves (1.1) for each \( x \in D(A) \) by Proposition 1.11. The uniqueness statement in this result thus implies that \( T(t)x = S(t)x \) for all \( t \geq 0 \) and \( x \in D(A) \). Since these operators are bounded, step 2) leads to \( T(\cdot) = S(\cdot) \) as desired.

4) Let \( \lambda \in \rho(A) \), \( t \geq 0 \), and \( x \in X \). Set \( y = R(\lambda, A)x \in D(A) \). Proposition 1.11 implies the identity \( T(t)(\lambda y - Ay) = (\lambda I - A)T(t)y \). Applying \( R(\lambda, A) \), we conclude that \( R(\lambda, A)T(t)x = T(t)R(\lambda, A)x \).

We next derive important information about spectrum and resolvent of generators. Actually we show a bit more than needed later on.

**Proposition 1.21.** Let \( A \) generate the \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( T(\cdot) \) and \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \). Then the following assertions hold.

a) If the improper integral

\[
R(\lambda)x := \int_0^\infty e^{-\lambda s}T(s)x \, ds := \lim_{t \to -\infty} \int_0^t e^{-\lambda s}T(s)x \, ds
\]

exists in \( X \) for all \( x \in X \), then \( \lambda \in \rho(A) \) and \( R(\lambda) = R(\lambda, A) \).

b) The integral in a) exists even absolutely for all \( x \in X \) if \( \text{Re} \, \lambda > \omega_0(T) \). Hence, the spectral bound (of \( A \))

\[
s(A) := \sup \{ \text{Re} \, \lambda \mid \lambda \in \sigma(A) \}
\]

is less than or equal than \( \omega_0(T) \).

c) Let \( M \geq 1 \) and \( \omega \in \mathbb{R} \) with \( \|T(t)\| \leq Me^{\omega t} \) for all \( t \geq 0 \). Take \( n \in \mathbb{N} \) and \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C}_\omega \) (i.e., \( \text{Re} \, \lambda > \omega \)). We then have

\[
\|R(\lambda, A)^n\| \leq \frac{M}{(\text{Re} \, \lambda - \omega)^n}.
\]

We recall from Definition 1.5 and Lemma 1.4 that the exponent \( \omega \) in part c) has to satisfy \( \omega \geq \omega_0(T) \) and that any number \( \omega \in (\omega_0(T), \infty) \) fulfills the conditions in c).

The integral in part a) is called the Laplace transform of \( T(\cdot)x \). It can be used for alternative approaches to the theory of \( C_0 \)-semigroups (and their generalizations), cf. [ABHN]. In Section 4.1 we will study whether the equality \( s(A) = \omega_0(T) \) can be shown in b). This property would allow to control the growth (or decay) of the semigroup in terms of the given object \( A \).

**Proof of Proposition 1.21.** a) Let \( h > 0 \) and \( x \in X \). By Lemma 1.18, we have the \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( T_{\lambda}(\cdot) = (e^{-\lambda s}T(s))_{s \geq 0} \) with generator \( A - \lambda I \) on the
domain $D(A)$. Equation (1.10) yields
\[
\frac{1}{h} (T_h - I) R(\lambda) x = \lim_{t \to \infty} \frac{1}{h} (T_h - I) \int_0^t T_s x \, ds = \lim_{t \to \infty} \frac{1}{h} \int_t^{t+h} T_s x \, ds - \frac{1}{h} \int_0^h T_s x \, ds \\
= -\frac{1}{h} \int_0^h T_s x \, ds,
\]
due to the convergence of $\int_0^M T_s x \, ds$. The right-hand side tends to $-x$ as $h \to 0$ by (1.4), so that $R(\lambda) x$ belongs to $D(A - \lambda I) = D(A)$ and satisfies $(\lambda I - A) R(\lambda) x = x$.

Let $x \in D(A)$. Proposition 1.11 says that $T(s) Ax = AT(s) x$ for $s \geq 0$, and $A$ is closed due to Proposition 1.20. Using also Remark 1.16 d), we deduce
\[
R(\lambda)(\lambda I - A)x = \lim_{t \to \infty} \int_0^t e^{-\lambda s} T(s)(\lambda I - A)x \, ds = \lim_{t \to \infty} (\lambda I - A) \int_0^t e^{-\lambda s} T(s) x \, ds \\
= (\lambda I - A) \lim_{t \to \infty} \int_0^t e^{-\lambda s} T(s) x \, ds = (\lambda I - A) R(\lambda) x.
\]
Hence, part a) is shown.

b) Let $x \in X$. Fix a number $\omega \in (\omega_0(T), \Re \lambda)$. It follows $\|e^{-\lambda s} T(s) x\| \leq Me^{(\omega-\Re \lambda)s}$ for some $M \geq 1$ and all $s \geq 0$. For $0 < a < b$ we can thus estimate
\[
\left\| \int_a^b T_s x \, ds - \int_a^b T_s x \, ds \right\| \leq \int_a^b \|T_s x\| \|x\| \int_a^b e^{(\omega-\Re \lambda)s} \, ds \to 0
\]
as $a,b \to \infty$. Consequently, $\int_0^t T_s x \, ds$ converges (absolutely) in $X$ as $t \to \infty$ for all $x \in X$, and thus assertion b) follows from a).

c) Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $x \in X$, and $t \geq 0$. Arguing as in Analysis 2, one can differentiate
\[
\left( \frac{d}{dx} \right)^{n-1} \int_0^t e^{-\lambda s} T(s) x \, ds = \int_0^t (-1)^{n-1} s^{n-1} e^{-\lambda s} T(s) x \, ds.
\]
As in part b), the integrals converge as $t \to \infty$ uniformly for $\Re \lambda \geq \omega + \varepsilon$ and any $\varepsilon > 0$. Hence, (1.6) and a variant of Remark 1.16 g) imply
\[
R(\lambda, A)^n x = \lim_{t \to \infty} \left( \frac{d}{dx} \right)^{n-1} \int_0^t T_s x \, ds = \lim_{t \to \infty} \frac{1}{(n-1)!} \int_0^t T_s x \, ds = \frac{1}{(n-1)!} \int_0^\infty s^{n-1} e^{-\lambda s} T(s) x \, ds.
\]
Computing an elementary integral, one can now estimate
\[
\|R(\lambda, A)^n x\| \leq \frac{M \|x\|}{(n-1)!} \int_0^\infty s^{n-1} e^{(\omega-\Re \lambda)s} \, ds = \frac{M}{(\Re \lambda - \omega)^n} \|x\|
\]
for all $\Re \lambda > \omega$ since $\varepsilon$ is arbitrary.

We calculate the generators of the translation semigroups from Example 1.9 and discuss their spectra. They turn out to be the first derivative endowed with appropriate domains. We also use the above necessary conditions to show that on certain domains the first derivative fails to be a generator.
EXAMPLE 1.22. a) Let $T(t)f = f(\cdot + t)$ be the translation group on $X = C_0(\mathbb{R})$. We compute the generator $A$ and its spectrum.

1) Below we use that a function $g \in X$ is uniformly continuous since $C_c(\mathbb{R})$ is dense in $X$ and uniform continuity is preserved by uniform limits.

For $f \in D(A)$, $t \neq 0$ and $s \in \mathbb{R}$, there exist the pointwise limits

$$ Af(s) = \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{1}{t}(T(t)f(s) - f(s)) = \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{1}{t}(f(s + t) - f(s)) = f'(s) $$

so that $f$ is differentiable with $f' = Af \in C_0(\mathbb{R})$. We have shown the inclusion

$$ D(A) \subseteq C^1_0(\mathbb{R}) := \{ f \in C^1(\mathbb{R}) \mid f, f' \in X \}. $$

Conversely, let $f \in C^1_0(\mathbb{R})$. For $s \in \mathbb{R}$, we compute

$$ \left| \frac{1}{t}(T(t)f(s) - f(s)) - f'(s) \right| = \left| \frac{1}{t}(f(s + t) - f(s)) - f'(s) \right| $$

$$ = \left| \frac{1}{t} \int_0^t (f'(s + \tau) - f'(s)) \, d\tau \right| $$

$$ \leq \sup_{0 \leq |\tau| \leq |t|} |f'(s + \tau) - f'(s)|. $$

The right-hand side tends to 0 as $t \to 0$ uniformly in $s \in \mathbb{R}$ since $f' \in C_0(\mathbb{R})$ is uniformly continuous. As a result, $f \in D(A)$ and so $A = \frac{d}{dt}$ with $D(A) = C^1_0(\mathbb{R})$.

2) In Theorem 1.30 we will see that $A$ generates the $C_0$–semigroup $(T(t))_{t \geq 0}$ and $-A$ is the generator of $(S(t))_{t \geq 0} = (T(-t))_{t \geq 0}$. Proposition 1.21 yields the inequalities $\sigma(A) \leq \omega_0(A) = 0$ and $\sigma(-A) \leq 0$ Observing that $-A - (A) = -A - A$, we conclude $\sigma(-A) = -\sigma(A)$ as well as $-R(\lambda, -A) = R(-\lambda, A)$. So we have proven the inclusion $\sigma(A) \subseteq i\mathbb{R}$.

To show the converse, let $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}_+$, $f \in X$, and $s \in \mathbb{R}$. Since all of the following limits exist with respect to the supremum norm in $s$, Proposition 1.21 yields

$$ (R(\lambda, A)f)(s) = \left( \lim_{b \to \infty} \int_0^b e^{\lambda t} T(t)f \, dt \right)(s) = \lim_{b \to \infty} \int_0^b e^{-\lambda t} T(t)f(s) \, dt $$

$$ = \lim_{b \to \infty} \int_0^b e^{-\lambda t} f(t + s) \, dt = \lim_{b \to \infty} \int_b^{b+s} e^{\lambda(s-\tau)} f(\tau) \, d\tau $$

$$ = \int_s^{\infty} e^{\lambda(s-\tau)} f(\tau) \, d\tau. $$

We pick functions $\varphi_n \in C_0(\mathbb{R})$ with $0 \leq \varphi_n \leq 1$ and $\varphi_n = 1$ on $[0, n]$ for $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and set $\alpha = \text{Re} \lambda > 0$, $\beta = \text{Im} \lambda$, as well as $f_n(\tau) = e^{i\beta \tau} \varphi_n(\tau)$. Since $\|f_n\| = 1$, the above formula leads to the lower bound

$$ \|R(\lambda, A)\| \geq \|R(\lambda, A)f_n\| \geq |(R(\lambda, A)f_n(0)| = \left| \int_0^\infty e^{-\alpha \tau} e^{-i\beta \tau} f_n(\tau) \, d\tau \right| $$

$$ = \int_0^\infty e^{-\alpha \tau} \varphi_n(\tau) \, d\tau \geq \int_0^n e^{-\alpha \tau} \, d\tau = \frac{1 - e^{-\alpha n}}{\alpha}. $$

Letting $n \to \infty$, we arrive at $\|R(\lambda, A)\| \geq \frac{1}{\text{Re} \lambda}$. Proposition 1.21 then yields the equality $\|R(\lambda, A)\| = \frac{1}{\text{Re} \lambda}$ (take $M = 1$, $\omega = 0$ and $n = 1$ there). If $i\beta$
belonged to \( \rho(A) \) for some \( \beta \in \mathbb{R} \), then we would infer

\[
\frac{1}{\alpha} = \|R(\alpha + i\beta, A)\| \to \|R(i\beta, A)\|
\]
as \( \alpha \to 0 \), which is impossible. We thus obtain \( \sigma(A) = i\mathbb{R} \).

b) We treat the nilpotent left translation semigroup on \( X = C_0([0, 1]) \); i.e.,

\[
(T(t)f)(s) = \begin{cases} 
  f(s + t), & s + t < 1, \\
  0, & s + t \geq 1,
\end{cases}
\]
for \( f \in X \), \( t \geq 0 \) and \( s \in [0, 1) \). Let \( A \) be its generator. Take \( f \in D(A) \).

As in part a), one shows that the right derivative \( \frac{df}{ds} \) exists and \( \frac{df}{ds} = Af \).

(Here we can only consider \( t \to 0^+ \).) However, since \( f \) and \( Af \) are continuous, Corollary 2.1.2 of [Pa] says that \( f \in C^1([0, 1]) \), and so we have the inclusion

\[
D(A) \subseteq C^1_0([0, 1]) := \{ f \in C^1([0, 1]) \mid f, f' \in X \}
\]
as well as \( Af = f' \). Let \( f \in C^1_0([0, 1]) \) and note that its 0-extension \( \tilde{f} \) to \( \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \) belongs to \( C^1_0(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}) \) and has compact support. As in part a), it follows

\[
\frac{1}{t} (T(t)f)(s) - f(s) = \begin{cases} 
  \frac{1}{t} (f(s + t) - f(s)), & 0 \leq s < 1 - t, \\
  -\frac{1}{t} f(s), & 1 - t \leq s < 1,
\end{cases}
\]

\[
= \frac{1}{t} (\tilde{f}(s + t) - \tilde{f}(s)) \rightarrow \tilde{f}'(s) = f'(s)
\]
as \( t \to 0^+ \) uniformly in \( s \in [0, 1) \), since \( \tilde{f}' \) is uniformly continuous. Hence,

\( D(A) = C^1_0([0, 1]) \) and \( Af = f' \). Because of \( \omega_0(A) = -\infty \), Proposition 1.20 yields \( \sigma(A) = \emptyset \) and \( \rho(A) = \mathbb{C} \).

c) The operator \( Af = f' \) with \( D(A) = C^1([0, 1]) \) on \( X = C([0, 1]) \) has the spectrum \( \sigma(A) = \mathbb{C} \). In fact, for each \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \) the function \( t \mapsto e^{\lambda t} \) belongs to \( D(A) \) with \( A e^{\lambda t} = \lambda e^{\lambda t} \) so that even \( \lambda \in \sigma_p(A) \). Hence, \( A \) is not a generator in view of Proposition 1.21.

d) Let \( X = C_0(\mathbb{R}_{\leq 0}) := \{ f \in C((-\infty, 0]) \mid f(s) \to 0 \text{ as } s \to -\infty \} \) and \( A = \frac{d}{ds} \) with \( D(A) = C^1_0(\mathbb{R}_{\leq 0}) := \{ f \in C^1(\mathbb{R}_{\leq 0}) \mid f, f' \in X \} \). Then \( A \) is not a generator. Indeed, for all \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C}_+ \) we have \( e^{\lambda t} \in D(A) \) and \( A e^{\lambda t} = \lambda e^{\lambda t} \) so that \( \lambda \in \sigma(A) \), violating \( s(A) < \infty \) in Proposition 1.21.

e) On \( X = C([0, 1]) \) the map \( A = \frac{d}{ds} \) with \( D(A) = \{ f \in C^1([0, 1]) \mid f(1) = 0 \} \) is not a generator as \( D(A) = \{ f \in X \mid f(1) = 0 \} \neq X \), cf. Proposition 1.20. \( \diamond \)

We stress that in parts c) and d) one does not impose conditions at the upper bound of the spatial domain, in contrast to a) and b). This lack of boundary conditions leads to spectral properties of \( A \) ruling out that it is a generator. We will come back to this point in Example 1.37.

1.2. Characterization of generators

Proposition 1.20 and 1.21 contain necessary conditions to be a generator. In this section we want to show their sufficiency. This is the content of Hille–Yosida Theorem 1.27 which is the core of the theory of \( C_0 \)-semigroups. Our
approach is based on the so called \textit{Yosida approximations} which are defined by
\begin{equation}
A_\lambda := \lambda AR(\lambda, A) = \lambda^2 R(\lambda, A) - \lambda I \in \mathcal{B}(X).
\end{equation}
for $\lambda \in \rho(A)$. Here we note the basic identities
\begin{equation}
AR(\lambda, A) = \lambda R(\lambda, A) - I \quad \text{and} \quad AR(\lambda, A)x = R(\lambda, A)Ax
\end{equation}
for $x \in D(A)$. The next lemma is stated in somewhat greater generality than needed later on. In view of Proposition 1.20 and 1.21, for a generator $A$ it says that the \textit{bounded operators} $A_\lambda$ approximate $A$ strongly on $D(A)$ as $\lambda \to \infty$.

\textbf{Lemma 1.23.} Let $A$ be a closed operator satisfying $(\omega, \infty) \subseteq \rho(A)$ and $\|R(\lambda, A)\| \leq \frac{M}{\lambda - \omega}$ for some $M \geq 1$ and $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$ and all $\lambda > \omega$. We then have $\lambda R(\lambda, A)x \to x$ as $\lambda \to \infty$ for all $x \in \overline{D(A)}$ and $\lambda AR(\lambda, A)y \to Ay$ as $\lambda \to \infty$ for all $y \in D(A)$ with $Ay \in \overline{D(A)}$.

\textbf{Proof.} Let $x \in D(A)$ and $\lambda \geq \omega + 1$. Equation (1.13) and the assumption yield that
\[\|\lambda R(\lambda, A)x - x\| = \|R(\lambda, A)Ax\| \leq \frac{M}{\lambda - \omega}\|Ax\| \to 0\]
as $\lambda \to \infty$. Since $\lambda R(\lambda, A)$ is uniformly bounded for $\lambda \geq \omega + 1$, the first assertion follows. Taking $x = Ay$ and using (1.13), one then deduces the second assertion from the first one. $\square$

For linear operators $A, B$ on $X$ we write $A \subseteq B$ if $\text{Gr}(A) \subseteq \text{Gr}(B)$; i.e., if $D(A) \subseteq D(B)$ and $Ax = Bx$ for all $x \in D(A)$. In this case we call $B$ an \textit{extension} of $A$. Equality of $A$ and $B$ is then often shown by means of the next observation, requiring that $D(A)$ is not ‘too small’ and $D(B)$ is not ‘too large.’

\textbf{Lemma 1.24.} Let $A$ and $B$ be linear operators with $A \subseteq B$ such that $A$ is surjective and $B$ is injective. We then have $A = B$. In particular, $A$ and $B$ are equal if they satisfy $A \subseteq B$ and $\rho(A) \cap \rho(B) \neq \emptyset$.

\textbf{Proof.} We have to prove the inclusion $D(B) \subseteq D(A)$. Let $x \in D(B)$. By the assumptions, there is a vector $y \in D(A)$ with $Bx = Ay = By$. Since $B$ is injective, we obtain $x = y$ so that $x$ belongs to $D(A)$.

Let $\lambda \in \rho(A) \cap \rho(B)$. The first part then shows the equality $\lambda I - A = \lambda I - B$, and hence $A = B$. $\square$

We introduce a class of $C_0$-semigroups which is easier to handle in many respects, cf. Theorem 1.40.

\textbf{Definition 1.25.} Let $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$. An $\omega$-contraction semigroup is a $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ satisfying $\|T(t)\| \leq e^{\omega t}$ for all $t \geq 0$. Such a semigroup is also said to be \textit{quasi-contraction}. If $\omega = 0$, we call $T(\cdot)$ a \textit{contraction} semigroup.

This concept depends on the choice of the norm on $X$ as described below.

\textbf{Remark 1.26.} a) Let $T(\cdot)$ be a contraction semigroup. Then the norm of the orbit $t \mapsto T(t)x$ is non-increasing since
\[\|T(t)x\| = \|T(t-s)T(s)x\| \leq \|T(s)x\|\]
for \( x \in X \) and \( t \geq s \geq 0 \). This fact is important since \( \|x\| \) is related to important quantities in many applications, e.g., the energy of the state \( x \).

b) Let \( A \in B(X) \). Estimating the power series in Example 1.3, we derive \( \|e^{tA}\| \leq e^{\|A\|t} \) so that \( A \) generates a \( \|A\| \)-contractive semigroup. However, its growth bound \( \omega_0(A) \) is possibly much smaller, as can be seen from Remark 1.6d.

c) There are unbounded generators \( A \) of a \( C_0 \)-semigroup having norms \( \|T(t)\| \geq M \) for all \( t > 0 \) and some \( M > 1 \). Hence, they cannot be \( \omega \)-contractive for any \( \omega \in \mathbb{R} \). As an example, let \( X = C_0(\mathbb{R}) \) be endowed with the norm

\[
\|f\| = \max \{ \sup_{s \geq 0} |f(s)|, M \sup_{s < 0} |f(s)| \}
\]

for some \( M > 1 \), which is equivalent to the supremum norm. The translations \( T(t)f = f(\cdot + t) \) thus yield a \( C_0 \)-semigroup on \( (X, \|\cdot\|) \). Take any \( t > 0 \). Choose a function \( f \in C_0(\mathbb{R}) \) such that \( \|f\|_\infty = 1 \) and \( \text{supp } f \subseteq (0, t) \). We then obtain \( \|f\| = 1 \), \( \text{supp } T(t)f \subseteq (-t, 0) \), and so

\[
\|T(t)\| \geq \|T(t)f\| = M \sup_{-t \leq s \leq 0} |f(s + t)| = M.
\]

Since \( \|T(t)\| \leq M \), we actually have \( \|T(t)\| = M \) for all \( t > 0 \).

d) However, for each \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( T(\cdot) \) on a Banach space \( X \) one can find an equivalent norm on \( X \) for which \( T(\cdot) \) becomes \( \omega \)-contractive. Indeed, take numbers \( M \geq 1 \) and \( \omega \in \mathbb{R} \) such that \( \|T(t)\| \leq Me^{\omega t} \) for all \( t \geq 0 \). We set

\[
|||x||| = \sup_{s \geq 0} e^{-\omega s} \|T(s)x\|
\]

for \( x \in X \), which defines an equivalent norm since \( \|x\| \leq |||x||| \leq M \|x\| \). We further obtain

\[
|||e^{-\omega t}T(t)x||| = \sup_{s \geq 0} e^{-\omega(s+t)} \|T(s + t)x\| \leq |||x|||
\]

so that \( T(\cdot) \) is \( \omega \)-contractive for this norm. However, this renorming can destroy additional properties as the Hilbert space structure, and in general one cannot do it for two \( C_0 \)-semigroups at the same time. See Remark 1.2.19 in [Go]. ◊

The following major theorem characterizes the generators of \( C_0 \)-semigroups. It was shown in the contraction case independently by Hille and Yosida in 1948. Yosida’s proof extends very easily to the general case and is presented below. As we see in Theorem 2.2, the generator property of \( A \) is equivalent to ‘wellposedness’ of (1.1). In other words, the Hille–Yosida Theorem describes the class of operators for which (1.1) is solvable in a reasonable sense. It is thus the fundument of the theory of linear evolutions equations, which is actually concerned with many topics beyond wellposedness – below we treat regularity, perturbation, approximation, and long-time behavior, for instance.

**Theorem 1.27.** Let \( M \geq 1 \) and \( \omega \in \mathbb{R} \). A linear operator \( A \) generates a \( C_0 \)-semigroup on \( X \) satisfying \( \|T(t)\| \leq Me^{\omega t} \) for all \( t \geq 0 \) if and only if

\[
A \text{ is closed, } D(A) = X, \quad (\omega, \infty) \subseteq \rho(A),
\]

\[
\forall n \in \mathbb{N}, \quad \lambda > \omega : \quad \|R(\lambda, A)^n\| \leq \frac{M}{(\lambda - \omega)^n}.
\]

(1.14)
In this case one even has $C_\omega = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \mid \text{Re} \lambda > \omega \} \subseteq \rho(A)$ and
\[ \forall n \in \mathbb{N}, \lambda \in C_\omega : \|R(\lambda, A)^n\| \leq \frac{M}{(\text{Re} \lambda - \omega)^n}. \tag{1.15} \]
The operator $A$ generates an $\omega$-contraction semigroup if and only if
\[ A \text{ closed, } \overline{D(A)} = X, \ (\omega, \infty) \subseteq \rho(A), \ \forall \lambda > \omega : \|R(\lambda, A)\| \leq \frac{1}{(\lambda - \omega)}. \tag{1.16} \]
In this case (1.15) is true with $M = 1$.

In applications it is of course much easier check the assumptions in the quasi-contractive case. Based on the above result, Theorem 1.40 will provide another, even more convenient characterization of generators in this case.

**Proof of Theorem 1.27.** It is clear (1.16) implies (1.14) for $M = 1$. Propositions 1.20 and 1.21 imply (1.15) and the necessity of (1.14) respectively (1.16). If (1.14) is true, then the shifted operator $A - \omega I$ satisfies (1.14) with ‘$\omega = 0’.$ Below we show that $A - \omega I$ generates a bounded semigroup. Lemma 1.18 then yields the assertion.

We establish the sufficiency of (1.14) in two steps. We first use the semigroups $e^{tA_n}$ generated by the (bounded) Yosida approximations $A_n = n^2 R(n, A) - nI$ for $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and prove that they converge to a $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ as $n \to \infty$. In a second step we show that it is generated by $A$.

1) Let (1.14) be true with $\omega = 0$. Take $n, m \in \mathbb{N}$ and $t \geq 0$. Employing Lemma 1.18, the powers series representation of $e^{tA}$ in Example 1.3 and (1.14), we estimate
\[ \|e^{tA_n}\| = \|e^{-tn}e^{n^2R(n,A)t}\| \leq e^{-tn} \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{(nt\|R(n,A)\|)^j}{j!} \right) \leq Me^{-tn} \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{(nt)^j}{j!} \right) = M. \tag{1.17} \]
We further have $A_n A_m = A_m A_n$ and hence
\[ A_n e^{tA_m} = A_n \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^j}{j!} A_m^j = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^j}{j!} A_m^j A_n = e^{tA_m} A_n. \]
Take $t_0 > 0$, $y \in D(A)$, and $t \in [0, t_0]$. Using (1.3), we next compute
\[ e^{tA_n} y - e^{tA_m} y = \int_0^t \frac{d}{ds} e^{(t-s)A_m} e^{sA_n} y \, ds = \int_0^t e^{(t-s)A_m} e^{sA_n} (A_n - A_m) y \, ds. \]
Estimate (1.17) and Lemma 1.23 then lead to the limit
\[ \|e^{tA_n} y - e^{tA_m} y\| \leq t_0 M^2 \|A_n y - A_m y\| \longrightarrow 0 \tag{1.18} \]
as $n, m \to \infty$. Because of the density of $D(A)$ and the bound (1.17), we can apply Lemma 4.10 of [FA]. Since $t_0 > 0$ is arbitrary, it yields operators $T(t)$ in $B(X)$ such that $e^{tA} x \to T(t)x$ as $n \to \infty$ and $\|T(t)\| \leq M$ for all $t \geq 0$ and $x \in X$. Clearly, $T(0) = I$ and
\[ T(t+s)x = \lim_{n \to \infty} e^{(t+s)A_n} x = \lim_{n \to \infty} e^{tA_n} e^{sA_n} x = T(t)T(s)x. \]
for all \( t, s \geq 0 \) (use Remark 1.14). Letting \( m \to \infty \) in (1.18), we further deduce

\[
\|e^{tA}y - T(t)y\| \leq t_0 M^2 \|A_n y - Ay\|
\]

for all \( t \in [0, t_0] \). This means that \( e^{tA}y \) converges to \( T(t)y \) uniformly for \( t \in [0, t_0] \), and hence \( T(\cdot)y \) is continuous for all \( y \in \text{D}(A) \). Lemma 1.7 and the density of \( \text{D}(A) \) now imply that \( T(\cdot) \) is a (bounded) \( C_0 \)-semigroup.

2) Let \( B \) be the generator of \( T(\cdot) \). Observe that \( (0, \infty) \subseteq \rho(A) \cap \rho(B) \) due to Proposition 1.21 and the assumptions. In view of Lemma 1.24 it thus remains to show \( A \subseteq B \). For \( t > 0 \) and \( y \in \text{D}(A) \), Lemma 1.19 and Remarks 1.14 and 1.16(e) yield

\[
\frac{1}{t} (T(t)y - y) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{1}{t} (e^{tA_n}y - y) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{1}{t} \int_0^t e^{sA_n}A_n y \, ds = \frac{1}{t} \int_0^t T(s)Ay \, ds.
\]

As \( t \to 0 \), from (1.4) we conclude that \( y \in \text{D}(B) \) and \( By = Ay \); i.e., \( A \subseteq B \). \( \square \)

We illustrate the above theorem by some examples. Applications to partial differential operators will be discussed in Section 1.4.

**Example 1.28.** a) Let \( X = C_0(\mathbb{R}_{\leq 0}) \) and \( A = -\frac{d}{ds} \) with \( \text{D}(A) = C^0_0(\mathbb{R}_{\leq 0}) \), cf. Example 1.22. Then \( A \) generates the \( C_0 \) semigroup given by \( T(t)f = f(\cdot - t) \) for \( t \geq 0 \) and \( f \in X \). It has the spectrum \( \sigma(A) = \mathbb{C}_{-\infty} \).

**Proof.** We first check in several steps the conditions (1.16).

1) Let \( f \in X \) and \( \varepsilon > 0 \). We extend \( f \) to a function \( \tilde{f} \in C_0(\mathbb{R}) \). As in Example 1.9 one finds a map \( \tilde{g} \in C_c(\mathbb{R}) \) with \( \|\tilde{f} - \tilde{g}\| \leq \varepsilon \). By the proof of Proposition 4.13 in [FA] there is function \( \tilde{h} \in C^\infty_c(\mathbb{R}) \) with \( \|\tilde{g} - \tilde{h}\| \leq \varepsilon \). As a result the restriction \( h \) of \( \tilde{h} \) to \( \mathbb{R}_{\leq 0} \) belongs to \( \text{D}(A) \) and satisfies \( \|f - h\| \leq 2\varepsilon \), so that \( A \) is densely defined.

2) Let the sequence \((u_n)\) in \( \text{D}(A) \) tend in \( X \) to a function \( u \), and \((Au_n)\) to some \( f \) in \( X \). The map \( u \) is thus differentiable with \(-u' = f \in X \). As a result \( u \in \text{D}(A) \) and \( Au = f \); i.e., \( A \) is closed.

3) Let \( f \in X \) and \( \lambda > 0 \). To show the bijectivity of \( \lambda I - A \), we note that a function \( u \) belongs to \( \text{D}(A) \) and satisfies \( \lambda u - Au = f \) if and only if

\[
u' = -\lambda u + f, \quad u \in C^1(\mathbb{R}_{\leq 0}) \cap X
\]

(using that then \( u' = -\lambda u + f \in X \)). This condition is equivalent to

\[
u \in C^1(\mathbb{R}_{\leq 0}) \cap X, \quad \forall 0 \leq s \leq 0: \quad u(s) = e^{-\lambda(s-t_0)}u(t_0) + \int_{t_0}^s e^{-\lambda(s-\tau)}f(\tau) \, d\tau.
\]

Since \( u \) and \( f \) are bounded and \( \lambda > 0 \), here one can let \( t_0 \to -\infty \) and derive

\[
u(s) = \int_{-\infty}^s e^{-\lambda(s-\tau)}f(\tau) \, d\tau =: R(\lambda)f(s) \quad \text{for all} \; s \leq 0, \quad \lim_{s \to -\infty} u(s) = 0.
\]

Conversely, the same reasoning yields that if the function \( v := R(\lambda)f \) belongs to \( X \), then it is an element of \( \text{D}(A) \) and satisfies \( \lambda v - Av = f \).

We show \( R(\lambda)f \in X \), where the continuity is clear. Let \( \varepsilon > 0 \). There is a number \( s_\varepsilon \leq 0 \) such that \( |f(\tau)| \leq \varepsilon \) for all \( \tau \leq s_\varepsilon \). For \( s \leq s_\varepsilon \) we then estimate

\[
|R(\lambda)f(s)| \leq \int_{-\infty}^s e^{-\lambda(s-\tau)}|f(\tau)| \, d\tau \leq \varepsilon \int_0^\infty e^{-\lambda \tau} \, d\tau = \frac{\varepsilon}{\lambda},
\]
substituting \( r = s - \tau \). As a result, \( R(\lambda)f(s) \to 0 \) as \( s \to -\infty \) so that \( \lambda \in \rho(A) \) and \( R(\lambda) = R(\lambda, A) \).

4) Employing the above formula for the resolvent, we calculate
\[
\|R(\lambda, A)f\|_\infty \leq \sup_{s \leq 0} \int_{-\infty}^{s} e^{-\lambda(s-\tau)}\|f\|_\infty \, d\tau = \|f\|_\infty \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-\lambda \tau} \, d\tau = \frac{\|f\|_\infty}{\lambda}
\]
for all \( f \in X \) and \( \lambda > 0 \). Theorem 1.27 now implies that \( A \) generates a contraction semigroup \( T(\cdot) \). In particular, \( \sigma(A) \) is contained in \( \overline{C_-} \). For \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C}_- \), the function \( e_{-\lambda} \) belongs to \( D(A) \) and satisfies \( Ae_{-\lambda} = e'_{-\lambda} = \lambda e_{-\lambda} \) so that \( \mathbb{C}_- \subseteq \sigma(A) \). The closedness of \( \sigma(A) \) then implies the second assertion.

5) To determine \( T(\cdot) \), we take \( \varphi \in D(A) \). We set \( u(t, s) = (u(t))(s) = (T(t)\varphi)(s) \) for \( t \geq 0 \) and \( s \leq 0 \). By Proposition 1.11, the function \( u \) belongs to \( C^1(\mathbb{R}_0, X) \cap C(\mathbb{R}_0, [D(A)]) \) and solves the problem
\[
\begin{align*}
\partial_t u(t, s) &= -\partial_s u(t, s), \quad t \geq 0, \; s \leq 0, \\
u(0, s) &= \varphi(s), \quad s \leq 0.
\end{align*}
\]
(Note that \( D(A) \) includes the ‘boundary condition’ \( u(t, s) \to 0 \) as \( s \to -\infty \).) It is straightforward to see that via \( v(t, s) = \varphi(s-t) \) one defines another solution in the same function spaces. The uniqueness statement in Proposition 1.11 then yields \( u = v \) and hence \( T(t)\varphi = \varphi(\cdot - t) \) for all \( t \geq 0 \). The last claim now follows from the density of \( D(A) \). \( \square \)

b) We provide an operator \( A \) which fulfills (1.14) for \( n = 1 \) and some \( M > 1 \), but which is not generator. So one cannot omit the powers \( n \) in (1.14).

Let \( X = C_0(\mathbb{R}) \times C_0(\mathbb{R}) \) with \( \|(f,g)\| = \max\{\|f\|_\infty,\|g\|_\infty\} \); \( m(s) = i s \), and
\[
A \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} m u + m v \\ m v \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} m & 0 \\ 0 & m \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}
\]
for \( (u, v) \in D(A) = \{(u, v) \in X \mid (m u, m v) \in X\} \).

Since \( C_c(\mathbb{R}) \times C_c(\mathbb{R}) \subseteq D(A) \), the domain \( D(A) \) is dense in \( X \). Take \( (u_n, v_n) \) in \( D(A) \) such that \( (u_n, v_n) \to (u, v) \) and \( A(u_n, v_n) \to (f, g) \) in \( X \) as \( n \to \infty \). By pointwise limits, we infer that \( m u_n + m v_n = f \) and \( m v_n = g \in C_0(\mathbb{R}) \), so that also \( m u_n \in C_0(\mathbb{R}) \). As a result, the vector \( (u, v) \) belongs to \( D(A) \) and \( A \) is closed.

Let \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C}_+ \). Since \( 1/(\lambda - m) \) and \( m/(\lambda - m) \) are bounded, the operator
\[
R(\lambda) = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\lambda - m} & \frac{m}{(\lambda - m)^2} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{\lambda - m} \end{pmatrix}
\]
maps \( X \) into \( D(A) \). We further compute
\[
(\lambda I - A)R(\lambda) = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda - m & -m \\ 0 & \lambda - m \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\lambda - m} & \frac{m}{(\lambda - m)^2} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{\lambda - m} \end{pmatrix} = I,
\]
and similarly \( R(\lambda)(\lambda w - Aw) = w \) for \( w \in D(A) \). So we have shown that \( \mathbb{C}_+ \subseteq \rho(A) \) and \( R(\lambda) = R(\lambda, A) \).

For \( \lambda > 0 \) and \( \|(f,g)\| \leq 1 \) we next estimate
\[
\|R(\lambda, A) \begin{pmatrix} f \\ g \end{pmatrix}\| \leq \max \left\{ \|\frac{f}{\lambda - m}\|_\infty + \|\frac{mg}{(\lambda - m)^2}\|_\infty, \|\frac{g}{\lambda - m}\|_\infty \right\}
\]
Let \( \lambda \) be a constant and similarly for \( t, s \). The question to the semigroup case, using the following simple fact.

The resolvent \( R(\lambda, A) \) is thus unbounded on every imaginary line \( \text{Re} \lambda = a \), violating Proposition 1.2.1(c); i.e., \( A \) does not generate a \( C_0 \)-semigroup.

There are operators satisfying even \( \| R(\lambda, A) \| \leq c/\text{Re}(\lambda) \) for some \( c > 1 \) and all \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C}_+ \) which fail to be a generator (see Example 2 in § 12.4 of [HP]).

We now turn our attention to the generation of groups. We will reduce this question to the semigroup case, using the following simple fact.

**Lemma 1.29.** Let \( T(\cdot) \) be a \( C_0 \)-semigroup and \( t_0 > 0 \) such that \( T(t_0) \) is invertible. Then \( T(\cdot) \) can be extended to a \( C_0 \)-group \( (T(t))_{t \in \mathbb{R}} \).

**Proof.** Take constants \( M \geq 1 \) and \( \omega \in \mathbb{R} \) such that \( \| T(t) \| \leq Me^{\omega t} \) for all \( t \geq 0 \). Set \( c = \| T(t_0)^{-1} \| \). Let \( 0 \leq t \leq t_0 \). We then compute

\[
T(t_0) = T(t_0 - t)T(t) = T(t)T(t_0 - t),
\]

\[
I = T(t_0)^{-1}T(t_0 - t)T(t) = T(t)T(t_0 - t)T(t_0)^{-1}.
\]

The operator \( T(t) \) thus has the inverse \( T(t_0)^{-1}T(t_0 - t) \) with norm less than or equal to \( M_1 := cMe^{\omega t_0} \). Next, let \( t = nt_0 + \tau \) for some \( n \in \mathbb{N} \) and \( \tau \in [0, t_0] \).

In this case \( T(t) = T(\tau)T(t_0)^n \) has the inverse \( T(t_0)^{-n}T(\tau)^{-1} \).

We now define \( T(t) := T(t)^{-1} \) for \( t \leq 0 \). This definition gives a group, since for \( t, s \geq 0 \) we can calculate

\[
T(-t)T(-s) = T(t)^{-1}T(s)^{-1} = (T(s)T(t))^{-1} = T(s + t)^{-1} = T(-s - t),
\]

\[
T(-t)T(s) = (T(s)T(t - s))^{-1}T(s) = T(t - s)^{-1}T(s)^{-1}T(s)
\]

\[
= T(t - s)^{-1} = T(s - t) \text{ for } t \geq s,
\]

\[
T(-t)T(s) = T(t)^{-1}T(T(t - s)) = T(s - t) \text{ for } s \geq t,
\]

and similarly for \( T(s)T(-t) \). Let \( t \in [0, t_0] \) and \( x \in X \). We then obtain

\[
\| T(-t)x - x \| = \| T(-t)(x - T(t)x) \| \leq M_1 \| x - T(t)x \| \to 0
\]
as \( t \to 0 \). So \( (T(t))_{t \in \mathbb{R}} \) is a \( C_0 \)-group by Lemma 1.7.

\[\square\]

The next theorem characterizes generators of \( C_0 \)-groups in the same way as in the Hille-Yosida Theorem 1.27, but now requiring resolvent bounds also for negative \( \lambda \). Moreover, \( A \) generates the \( C_0 \)-group \( (T(t))_{t \in \mathbb{R}} \) if and only if \( A \) and \( -A \) generate the \( C_0 \)-semigroups \( (T(t))_{t \geq 0} \) and \( (T(-t))_{t \geq 0} \), respectively.
THEOREM 1.30. Let $A$ be a linear operator, $M \geq 1$, and $\omega \geq 0$. The following assertions are equivalent.

a) $A$ generates a $C_0$-group $(T(t))_{t \in \mathbb{R}}$ with $\|T(t)\| \leq M e^{\omega |t|}$ for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$.

b) $A$ generates a $C_0$-semigroup $(T_+(t))_{t \geq 0}$, and $-A$ with $D(-A) := D(A)$ generates a $C_0$-semigroup $(T_-(t))_{t \geq 0}$ with $\|T_\pm(t)\| \leq M e^{\omega t}$ for all $t \geq 0$.

c) $A$ is closed, $\overline{D(A)} = X$, and for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ with $|\lambda| > \omega$ we have $\lambda \in \rho(A)$ and $\|(|\lambda| - \omega)^n R(\lambda, A)^n\| \leq M$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$.

If one (and thus all) of these conditions is (are) fulfilled, one has $T_+(t) = T(t)$ and $T_-(t) = T(-t)$ for every $t \geq 0$. Moreover, in part c) one can then replace ‘$\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$’ by ‘$\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$’ and ‘$|\lambda|$’ by ‘$|\text{Re} \lambda|$’.

Proof. 1) We first deduce statement b) from a). Assuming a), we set $T_+(t) = T(t)$ and $T_-(t) = T(-t)$ for each $t \geq 0$. Recall from Remark 1.2 that $T(-t) = T(t)^{-1}$. It is easy to check that one thus obtains two $C_0$-semigroups. We denote their generators by $A_+$.

For $x \in D(A)$, there exists $\frac{d}{dt} T(0)x = Ax$ implying $A \subseteq A_+$ and $A \subseteq -A_-$. To show the inverse inclusion, let $x \in D(A_-)$ and $t > 0$. We then compute

$$\frac{1}{t}(T(-t)x - x) = \frac{1}{t}(T_-(t)x - x) \to -A_-x,$$

$$\frac{1}{t}(T(t)x - x) = -T(t)\frac{1}{t}(T_-(t)x - x) \to -A_-x$$

as $t \to 0$, so that $x \in D(A)$ and hence $A = -A_-$. One proves $A = A_+$ similarly. Therefore, property b) and the first addendum are true.

2) Let b) be valid. For $\lambda > \omega$, assertion c) follows from Theorem 1.27. For $\lambda <-\omega$, we use that $\sigma(-A) = -\sigma(A)$ with $R(-\lambda, -A) = -R(\lambda, A)$, cf. Example 1.22 a). Theorem 1.27 thus also yields the estimate in part c) for $\lambda < -\omega$ since here $-\lambda = |\lambda|$. The second addendum is shown in the same way.

3) We assume claim c) and derive statement a). Theorem 1.27 implies that $A$ generates a $C_0$-semigroup $(T_+(t))_{t \geq 0}$ and $-A$ generates a $C_0$-semigroup $(T_-(t))_{t \geq 0}$ (arguing for $-A$ as in the previous step). Let $x \in D(A) = D(-A)$ and $t \geq s \geq 0$. Proposition 1.11 and its proof imply

$$\frac{d}{dt} T_+(s)T_-(s)x = T_+(s)AT_-(s)x + T_+(s)(-A)T_-(s)x = 0,$$

and thus $T_+(t)T_-(t)x = x$. Analogously, one obtains $T_-(t)T_+(t)x = x$. It follows that $I = T_+(t)T_-(t) = T_-(t)T_+(t)$ since $D(A)$ is dense. By Lemma 1.29, $T_+(\cdot)$ can thus be extended to a $C_0$-group. Let $B$ be its generator. We have $B \subseteq A$ by definition and $s(B) < \infty$ by step 1) and Proposition 1.21. Condition c) and Lemma 1.24 then yield $A = B$ and hence assertion a).

1.3. Dissipative operators

Even in the contraction case, the Hille-Yosida Theorem 1.27 poses the difficult task to show a resolvent estimate for all $\lambda > 0$. In this section we prove the Lumer-Phillips Theorem 1.40 which reduces this task to checking the dissipativity and a certain range condition of $A$. The former property can often
be verified by direct computations, and for the latter there are powerful functional analytic tools to solve the occurring equations. Below these matters will be illustrated by the first derivative again, more involved applications will be treated in the following section.

We start with an auxiliary notion. The duality set \( J(x) \) of a vector \( x \in X \) is defined by

\[
J(x) = \{ x^* \in X^* \mid \langle x, x^* \rangle = \| x \|^2, \| x \| = \| x^* \| \},
\]

where \( \langle x, x^* \rangle = x^*(x) \) for all \( x \in X \) and \( x^* \in X^* \). The Hahn-Banach theorem ensures that \( J(x) \neq \emptyset \), cf. Corollary 5.10 in [FA]. In standard function spaces one can compute elements in the duality set explicitly.

**Example 1.31.** a) Let \( X \) be a Hilbert space with scalar product \( \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle \). By Riesz’ Theorem 3.10 in [FA], for each functional \( y^* \in X^* \) there is a unique vector \( y \in X \) satisfying \( \langle x, y^* \rangle = \langle x, y \rangle \) for all \( x \in X \), and one has \( \| y \| = \| y^* \| \). As a result, \( y^* \in J(x) \) is equivalent to \( \| x \| = \| y \| \) and \( \langle x, y \rangle = \| x \|^2 \), or to \( \| x \| = \| y \| \) and \( \langle x, y \rangle = \| x \| \| y \| \). These conditions are valid if and only if \( y = \alpha x \) for some \( \alpha \in \mathbb{C} \) with \( |\alpha| = 1 \) (due to the characterization of equality in the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality). Inserting this expression in \( \langle x, y \rangle = \| x \|^2 \), we see that \( x = y \). The converse implication is clear. Consequently, \( J(x) = \{ \varphi_x \} \) for the functional given by \( \varphi_x(z) = \langle z, x \rangle \).

b) Let \( X = L^p(\mu) \) for an exponent \( p \in [1, \infty) \) and a measure space \((S, \mathcal{A}, \mu)\) which has to be \( \sigma \)-finite if \( p = 1 \). We identify \( X^* \) with \( L^{p'}(\mu) \) via the usual duality pairing, where \( p' = \frac{p}{p-1} \) for \( p > 1 \) and \( p' = \infty \), see Theorem 5.4 in [FA]. Take \( f \in X \setminus \{0\} \). We set

\[
g = \| f \|_{p'}^{2-p} \| f \|^2_{p-2}
\]
writing \( \frac{0}{0} := 0 \). For \( p = 1 \), we have \( \| g \|_\infty = \| f \|_1 \). For \( p > 1 \), we compute

\[
\| g \|_{p'} = \| f \|_p^{2-p} \left( \int_S |f|^{p(1) - \frac{p}{p-1}} \, d\mu \right)^{\frac{p-1}{p}} = \| f \|_p^{2-p} \| f \|_{p-1}^{-1} = \| f \|_p.
\]

Since also

\[
\langle f, g \rangle = \| f \|_p^{-2-p} \int_S f^{2-p} \, d\mu = \| f \|_p^{2-p} \| f \|_{p-1} = \| f \|_p^2,
\]

we obtain \( g \in J(f) \). It follows from an exercise that \( J(f) = \{ g \} \) if \( p \in (1, \infty) \).

Note that \( g = \overline{f} \) for \( p = 2 \) which corresponds to part a).

c) Let \( \emptyset \neq U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m \) be open and \( E = C_0(U) \) with \( C_0(U) := \{ f \in C(U) \mid f(x) \to 0 \text{ as } x \to \partial U \text{ and as } |x| \to \infty \text{ for unbounded } U \} \), which is a Banach space for the supremum norm. For \( f \in E \) there is a point \( x_0 \in U \) with \( |f(x_0)| = \| f \|_\infty \). Set \( \varphi(g) = \overline{f(x_0)} g(x_0) \) for \( g \in E \); i.e., \( \varphi = \overline{f(x_0)} \delta_{x_0} \). As in Example 2.8 of [FA] one checks that \( \varphi \in E^* \), \( \| \varphi \| = |f(x_0)| = \| f \|_\infty \), and \( \varphi(f) = \overline{f(x_0)}^2 = \| f \|_2^2 \). Hence, \( \varphi \) belongs to \( J(f) \). The same construction works on \( E = C(K) \) for a compact metric space \( K \).

We now state the core concept of this section.
1.3. Dissipative operators

Definition 1.32. A linear operator $A$ is called dissipative if for each vector $x \in \text{D}(A)$ there is a functional $x^* \in J(x)$ such that $\text{Re}(Ax, x^*) \leq 0$. The operator $A$ is called accretive if $-A$ is dissipative.

The next fundamental characterization provides the link between dissipativity and the resolvent condition (1.16) in the Hille–Yosida theorem. We also show that a generator of a contraction semigroup is dissipative in a somewhat stronger sense, which will be used in Theorem 3.8.

Proposition 1.33. A linear operator $A$ is dissipative if and only if it satisfies $\|\lambda x - Ax\| \geq \lambda \|x\|$ for all $\lambda > 0$ and $x \in \text{D}(A)$. If $A$ generates a contraction semigroup, then we have $\text{Re}(Ax, x^*) \leq 0$ for every $x \in \text{D}(A)$ and all $x^* \in J(x)$.

Proof. 1) Let $A$ generate the contraction semigroup $T(\cdot)$. Take $x \in \text{D}(A)$ and $x^* \in J(x)$. Using $x^* \in J(x)$ and the contractivity, we estimate
\[
\text{Re}(Ax, x^*) = \lim_{t \to 0^+} \text{Re} \langle \frac{1}{t} (T(t)x - x), x^* \rangle = \lim_{t \to 0^+} \frac{1}{t} \left( \text{Re}(T(t)x, x^*) - \|x\|^2 \right)
\leq \limsup_{t \to 0^+} \frac{1}{t} (\|x\| \|x^*\| - \|x\|^2) = 0.
\]

2) Let $A$ be dissipative. Take $x \in \text{D}(A)$ and $\lambda > 0$. There thus exists a functional $x^* \in J(x)$ with $\text{Re}(Ax, x^*) \leq 0$. These facts imply the inequalities
\[
\lambda \|x\|^2 \leq \text{Re}(\lambda x, x^*) - \text{Re}(Ax, x^*) \leq |\langle \lambda x - Ax, x^* \rangle| \leq \|\lambda x - Ax\| \|x^*\|.
\]
Since $\|x\| = \|x^*\|$, it follows $\lambda \|x\| \leq \|\lambda x - Ax\|$. If $x = 0$ we can take $x^* = 0$ in the definition of dissipativity. Otherwise, we replace $x$ by $\|x\|^{-1} x$, and will thus assume that $\|x\| = 1$.

Take $y^*_\lambda \in J(\lambda x - Ax)$. This functional is not zero since $\|y^*_\lambda\| = \|\lambda x - Ax\| \geq \|x\| = \lambda > 0$ by the assumptions. We now set $x^*_\lambda = \|y^*_\lambda\|^{-1} y^*_\lambda$ and note that $\|x^*_\lambda\| = 1$. Using the assumptions again, we deduce
\[
\lambda \leq \|\lambda x - Ax\| = \frac{1}{\|y^*_\lambda\|} \langle \lambda x - Ax, y^*_\lambda \rangle = \text{Re}(\lambda x - Ax, x^*_\lambda)
\]
\[
= \lambda \text{Re}(x, x^*_\lambda) - \text{Re}(Ax, x^*_\lambda) \leq \min \{ \lambda - \text{Re}(Ax, x^*_\lambda), \lambda \text{Re}(Ax, x^*_\lambda) + \|Ax\| \}
\]
This inequality implies the core bounds
\[
\text{Re}(Ax, x^*_\lambda) \leq 0 \quad \text{and} \quad 1 - \frac{1}{\lambda} \|Ax\| \leq \text{Re}(Ax, x^*_\lambda).
\]
Let $\tilde{x}^*_\lambda$ be the restriction of $x^*_\lambda$ to the space $E = \text{lin}\{x, Ax\}$ equipped with the norm of $X$. Because of $\|\tilde{x}^*_\lambda\| \leq \|x^*_\lambda\| = 1$, the Bolzano–Weierstraß theorem yields a sequence $(\lambda_j)$ in $\mathbb{R}_+$ and a vector $y^* \in E^*$ such that $\lambda_j \to \infty$ and $\tilde{x}^*_\lambda \to y^*$ as $j \to \infty$. Applying these limits to the above estimates, we derive
\[
\|y^*\| \leq 1, \quad \text{Re}(Ax, y^*) \leq 0 \quad \text{and} \quad 1 \leq \text{Re}(x, y^*).
\]
The Hahn–Banach theorem allows us to extend $y^*$ to a functional $x^* \in X^*$ with $\|x^*\| = \|y^*\| \leq 1$. It then satisfies $\text{Re}(Ax, x^*) \leq 0$ and
\[
1 \leq \text{Re}(x, x^*) \leq \|x, x^*\| \leq \|x^*\| \leq 1
\]
as $\|x\| = 1$. So we have equalities in the above formula, which means that $\|x^*\| = 1 = \|x\|$ and $\langle x, x^* \rangle = 1 = \|x\|^2$; i.e., $x^* \in J(x)$ and $A$ is dissipative. □
The dissipativity of differential operators $A$ heavily depends on the boundary conditions, as we now discuss for first-order operators on an interval.

**Example 1.34.** a) Let $X = C_0(\mathbb{R})$, $b, c \in C_b(\mathbb{R})$ be real-valued, and $Au = bu' + cu$ with $D(A) = C^1_0(\mathbb{R})$. Take $u \in D(A)$ and some $s_0 \in \mathbb{R}$ with $|u(s_0)| = \|u\|_{\infty}$. Then $\varphi = \overline{\nu}(s_0)\delta_{s_0}$ belongs to $J(u)$ by Example 1.31. We then compute
\[
\begin{align*}
r := \text{Re}(Au - \|c_+\|_{\infty}u, \varphi) &= b(s_0)\text{Re}(u'(s_0)\overline{\nu}(s_0)) + (c(s_0) - \|c_+\|_{\infty})|u(s_0)|^2 \\
&\leq b(s_0)\text{Re}(u'(s_0)\overline{\nu}(s_0)).
\end{align*}
\]
We set $h(s) = \text{Re}(\overline{\nu}(s_0)u(s))$ for $s \in \mathbb{R}$. Clearly, $h \in C^1_0(\mathbb{R})$ is real-valued and
\[
|u(s_0)|^2 = h(s_0) \leq \|h\|_{\infty} \leq |u(s_0)|\|u\|_{\infty} = |u(s_0)|^2
\]
so that $h$ attains its maximum at $s_0$. Therefore, $h'(s_0) = 0$ and $r \leq 0$. This means that $A - \|c_+\|_{\infty}I$ is dissipative.

b) Let $X = C([0, 1])$, $b, c \in \mathbb{R}$ be real-valued, $b(0) \geq 0$ for simplicity, and $A_{j} = bu' + cu$ with $D(A_{j}) = \{u \in C^1([0, 1]) \mid u'(j) = 0\}$ for $j \in \{0, 1\}$. Then $A_1 - \|c_+\|_{\infty}I$ is dissipative. If $b(1) \leq 0$, also $A_0 - \|c_+\|_{\infty}I$ is dissipative. On the other hand, if $b(1) > 0$ the operator $A_0 - \omega I$ does not generate a contraction semigroup for any $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$. (Using more measure theory, one can show that it is not dissipative.)

**Proof.** For $u \in D(A_{j})$, we use the functional $\varphi(v) = \pi(s_0)v(s_0)$ on $X$, where $|u(s_0)| = |u|_{\infty}$ for some $s_0 \in [0, 1]$. We also set $h(s) = \text{Re}(\overline{\nu}(s_0)u(s))$ for $s \in [0, 1]$. As in a), one sees that $\varphi$ belongs to $J(u)$, $h \in C^1([0, 1])$ attains its maximum at $s_0$, and
\[
r := \text{Re}(A_{j}u - \|c_+\|_{\infty}u, \varphi) \leq b(s_0)\text{Re}(u'(s_0)\overline{\nu}(s_0)) = b(s_0)h'(s_0).
\]
If $s_0 \in (0, 1)$, this inequality again yields $r \leq 0$. Similarly, for $s_0 = 0$ we obtain
\[
h'(0) = \lim_{s \to 0^+} \frac{1}{s}(h(s) - h(0)) \leq 0
\]
since $h(0)$ is a maximum of $h$. Using $b(0) \geq 0$, we infer $r \leq 0$.

Finally, let $s_0 = 1$. In this case the above argument yields $h'(1) \geq 0$. We first look at $j = 0$. For $b(1) \leq 0$, we derive $r \leq b(1)h'(1) \leq 0$ so that $A_0 - \|c_+\|_{\infty}I$ is dissipative in this case. Next, let $b(1) > 0$. Fix $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$. Choose a real-valued function $u \in D(A_0)$ with maximum $u(1) = 1$ and $u'(1) > (\omega - c(1))/b(1)$. Since then $\varphi = \delta_1$, we obtain the inequality
\[
\text{Re}(A_0u - \omega u, \varphi) = b(1)u'(1) + c(1) - \omega > 0.
\]
Hence, $A_0 - \omega I$ cannot generate a contraction semigroup by Proposition 1.33. (Note that we did not show that $\text{Re}(A_0u - \omega u, \varphi) > 0$ for all $\psi \in J(u)$.)

For $j = 1$ we have the boundary condition $u'(1) = 0$ and thus $h'(1) = 0$. It follows that $r \leq b(1)h'(1) = 0$ and so $A_1 - \|c_+\|_{\infty}I$ is dissipative.

**c)** Let $X = L^2(\mathbb{R})$ and $A = \frac{d^2}{ds^2}$ with $D(A) = C^1_0(\mathbb{R})$. For $u \in D(A)$ we have $\overline{\nu} \in J(u)$ by Example 1.31. Integration by parts yields
\[
2\text{Re}(Au, \overline{\nu}) = \langle Au, \overline{\nu} \rangle + \langle Au, \overline{\nu} \rangle = \int_{\mathbb{R}} u'\overline{\nu}ds + \int_{\mathbb{R}} \overline{\nu}u'ds = 0;
\]
i.e., $A$ is dissipative (but not closed by Example 1.43). In the same way one checks the dissipativity of $-A$.  

1.3. Dissipative operators 25
d) Let \( X = L^2(0, 1) \), \( A_j = \frac{d}{dx} \), and \( D(A_j) = \{ u \in C^1([0, 1]) \mid u(j) = 0 \} \) for \( j \in \{0, 1\} \). For \( u \in D(A_j) \) we take again \( \overline{u} \in J(u) \) and obtain
\[
2 \Re \langle Au, \overline{u} \rangle = \int_0^1 u' \overline{u} \, ds + \int_0^1 \overline{u}' u \, ds = u(1)\overline{u}_0 - u(0)\overline{u}_0.
\]
It follows that \( A_1 \) is dissipative. However, \( A_0 = -\omega I \) is not dissipative for any \( \omega \in \mathbb{R} \), since we can find a map \( u \) in \( D(A_0) \) satisfying \( |u(1)|^2 > 2\omega ||u||_2^2 \) and so
\[
\Re \langle A_0 u - \omega u, \overline{u} \rangle = \frac{1}{2}|u(1)|^2 - \omega ||u||_2^2 > 0.
\]

Examples c) and d) can be extended to \( L^p \) with \( p \in [1, \infty) \), cf. Example 1.49. Above we have encountered rather natural dissipative, but nonclosed operators. To treat such operators, we introduce a concept extending closedeness.

**Intermezzo 2: Closable operators.**

**Definition 1.35.** A linear operator \( A \) is called closable if it possesses a closed extension \( B \).

Note that a closed operator is closable since \( A \subseteq A \). We first characterize closability and construct the closure \( \overline{A} \) of a closable operator \( A \), which is the smallest closed extension of \( A \).

**Lemma 1.36.** For a linear operator \( A \), the following statements are equivalent.

a) The operator \( A \) is closable.

b) Let \( (x_n) \) be a sequence in \( D(A) \) such that \( x_n \rightarrow 0 \) and \( Ax_n \rightarrow y \) in \( X \) as \( n \rightarrow \infty \). Then \( y = 0 \).

c) In the set \( D(\overline{A}) = \{ x \in X \mid \exists \, (x_n) \text{ in } D(A), y \in X : x_n \rightarrow x, Ax_n \rightarrow y, n \rightarrow \infty \} \), the vector \( y \) is uniquely determined by \( x \). Letting \( \overline{A} : D(\overline{A}) \rightarrow X; \overline{A}x = y \), one thus defines a map. The operator \( \overline{A} \) is linear, closed, and extends \( A \).

If one and hence all of the properties a)–c) are valid, then \( \text{Gr}(\overline{A}) = \text{Gr}(A) \), \( D(A) \) is dense in \( |D(\overline{A})| \), and we have \( \overline{A} \subseteq B \) for every closed operator \( B \supseteq A \).

**Proof.** Clearly, part c) implies a). Let a) be true and \( B \) be a closed extension of \( A \). Take \( (x_n) \) as in statement b). Then the vectors \( Ax_n = Bx_n \) tend to \( y = B0 = 0 \) since \( B \) is closed.

We assume that property b) holds. Let \( (x_n) \) and \( (z_n) \) be sequences in \( D(A) \) with limit \( x \) in \( X \) such that \( (Ax_n) \) converges to \( y \) and \( (Az_n) \) to \( w \) in \( X \). Then \( (x_n - z_n) \) is a null sequence in \( X \) with \( A(x_n - z_n) = Ax_n - Az_n \rightarrow y - w \) as \( n \rightarrow \infty \). Part b) thus implies \( y = w \), so that \( \overline{A} \) is a mapping. One easily verifies that \( \overline{A} \) is linear and that \( \text{Gr}(\overline{A}) = \text{Gr}(A) \), which shows the first part of the addendum. Hence, \( \overline{A} \) is closed due to Remark 1.16 and \( \overline{A} \) extends \( A \). Therefore assertion c) is shown.

Let \( B \) be another closed extension of \( A \). We then have \( \text{Gr}(A) \subseteq \text{Gr}(B) \) and so \( \text{Gr}(\overline{A}) = \overline{\text{Gr}(A)} \subseteq \text{Gr}(B) \) because of the closedness of \( B \). In particular, \( B \) extends \( \overline{A} \). The density assertion is an immediate consequence of \( \overline{\text{Gr}(A)} = \text{Gr}(\overline{A}) \) and the definition of the graph norm.  

As consequence of this lemma, a linear operator is closed if and only if it is its own closure. We illustrate the concepts of extension and closure by the first derivative, again stressing the role of the boundary conditions.
Example 1.37. a) Let \( X = L^1((0, 1)) \) and \( Af = f(0)I \) with \( D(A) = C([0, 1]) \). This operator is not closable. In fact, the functions \( f_n \in D(A) \) given by \( f_n(s) = \max\{1 - ns, 0\} \) satisfy \( \|f_n\|_1 = 1/2n \to 0 \) as \( n \to \infty \), but \( Af_n = 1 \) for all \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), contradicting Lemma 1.36 b).

b) Let \( X = C([0, 1]) \) and \( A_0u = u' \) with \( D(A_0) = C^1([0, 1]) := C^1((0, 1)) \), as well as \( Au = u' \) with \( D(A) = C^1((0, 1)) := C^1((0, 1)) \). As in Example 1.15 we see that \( A \) is closed. Hence, \( A_0 \) is closable and \( \overline{A_0} \subseteq A \) since \( A_0 \subseteq A \). To check equality, let \( u \in C^1_0(0, 1) \). Take \( \varphi_n \in C^1_0(0, 1) \) such that \( \varphi = 1 \) on \([1/n, 1 - 1/n] \), \( 0 \leq \varphi_n \leq 1 \) and \( \|\varphi_n\|_\infty \leq cn \) for some \( c > 0 \) and all \( n \in \mathbb{N} \) with \( n \geq 2 \). (For instance, one can take

\[
\varphi_n(s) = \begin{cases} 
0, & 0 < s < \frac{1}{4n}, \\
8n^2(s - \frac{1}{4n})^2, & \frac{1}{4n} \leq s \leq \frac{1}{2n}, \\
1 - 8n^2(\frac{1}{4n} - s)^2, & \frac{1}{2n} \leq s \leq \frac{3}{4n}, \\
1, & \frac{3}{4n} \leq s \leq \frac{1}{2}, \\
\varphi_n(1 - s), & \frac{1}{2} < s < 1,
\end{cases}
\]

where \( c = 4 \). Then the function \( u_n = \varphi_nu \) belongs to \( D(A_0) \), and we have

\[
\|u_n - u\|_\infty = \sup_{[0, \frac{1}{n}]} |(\varphi_n(s) - 1)u(s)| \leq \sup_{[0, \frac{1}{n}]} |u(s)| \to 0,
\]

\[
\|\varphi_nu' - u'\|_\infty \leq \sup_{[0, \frac{1}{n}]} |(\varphi_n(s) - 1)u'(s)| \to 0
\]
as \( n \to \infty \) since \( u, u' \in C_0(0, 1) \). We further obtain

\[
\|\varphi_nu\|_\infty \leq \sup_{s \in [0, \frac{1}{n}]} |\varphi_n'(s)u(s)| + \sup_{s \in [1 - \frac{1}{n}, 1]} |\varphi_n'(s)u(s)|
\]

\[
\leq \sup_{s \in [0, \frac{1}{n}]} cn \left| \int_0^s u'(\tau) \, d\tau \right| + \sup_{s \in [1 - \frac{1}{n}, 1]} cn \left| \int_s^1 u'(\tau) \, d\tau \right|
\]

\[
\leq cn \int_0^{\frac{1}{n}} |u'(\tau)| \, d\tau + cn \int_{1 - \frac{1}{n}}^1 |u'(\tau)| \, d\tau \to 0
\]
as \( n \to \infty \), because of (1.4) and \( u' \in C_0(0, 1) \). Hence, \( A_0(\varphi_nu) = \varphi_n'u + \varphi_nu' \) converges to \( Au = u' \). This means that \( A \subseteq \overline{A_0} \) and thus \( \overline{A_0} = A \). In particular \( A_0 \) is not closed and thus fails to be a generator.

We discuss further closed extensions of \( A_0 \) given by \( A_ju = u' \) for \( j \in \{1, 2, 3\} \).

1) Let \( D(A_1) = \{ u \in C^1([0, 1]) \mid u'(1) = 0 \} \). By an exercise, \( A_1 \) generates a \( C_0 \)-semigroup on \( X \) and \( \sigma(A_1) = \{0\} \). Observe that \( A_1 \) is a strict extension of \( A \). Lemma 1.24 thus implies that \( \rho(A) \cap \rho(A_1) = \{0\} \) and hence \( \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\} \subseteq \sigma(A) \).

(Actually, we have \( \sigma(A) = \mathbb{C} \) since \( 1 \notin AD(A) \).) As a result, \( A \) is not generator - it has too many boundary conditions, namely four instead of one as in \( D(A_1) \).

2) Let \( D(A_3) = C^1((0, 1]) \). Example 1.22 says that \( \sigma(A_3) = \mathbb{C} \). So \( A_3 \) is not a generator because it has not enough boundary conditions, namely none. We have \( A \subseteq A_1 \subseteq A_3 \).
3) Let \( D(A_2) = \{ u \in C^1([0, 1]) \mid u(1) = 0 \} \). Also \( A_2 \) is ‘sandwiched’ between \( A \) and \( A_3 \); i.e., \( A \not\subseteq A_2 \subseteq A_3 \), but \( A_1 \) and \( A_2 \) are not comparable. The operator \( A_2 \) is not a generator as its domain is not dense, see Example 1.22.

Summing up, the ‘minimal’ operator \( A \) and the ‘maximal’ operator \( A_3 \) do not generate \( C_0 \)-semigroups. Between them there are various, partly noncomparable operators (so-called ‘realizations’ of \( \frac{d}{dt} \)) which may or may not be generators. Their domains are often determined by boundary conditions. \( \diamond \)

We come back to the investigation of semigroups. Below we use closures in a generation result, but at first we establish sufficient conditions for a subspace \( D \) to be dense in \( D(A) \) in the graph norm. Such a subspace is called core of a closed operator \( A \), since one can often extend properties from cores to the full domain. (Observe that \( \overline{A|D} = A \) if and only if \( D \) is a core.) In Example 1.37 b) the set \( C^1_2(0, 1) \) is a core for \( A \).

It is often difficult to decide whether a subspace \( D \) is a core of an operator \( A \). The next result gives a convenient sufficient condition involving the semigroup.

**Proposition 1.38.** Let \( A \) generate the \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( T(\cdot) \) on \( X \). Let \( D \) be a linear subspace of \( D(A) \) which is dense in \( X \) and invariant under the semigroup; i.e., \( T(t)D \subseteq D \) for all \( t \geq 0 \). Then \( D \) is dense in \([\overline{D(A)}] \).

**Proof.** Set \( C = \sup_{0 \leq t \leq 1} \| T(t) \| \). Let \( x \in D(A) \). The map \( T(\cdot)x : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \to [\overline{D(A)}] \) is continuous by Proposition 1.11. Take \( \varepsilon > 0 \). There is a time \( \tau = \tau(\varepsilon, x) \in (0, 1] \) with \( \| T(t)x - x \|_A \leq \varepsilon \) for all \( t \in [0, \tau] \). It follows

\[
\left\| \frac{1}{\tau} \int_0^\tau T(t)x \, dt - x \right\|_A \leq \frac{1}{\tau} \int_0^\tau \| T(t)x - x \|_A \, dt \leq \varepsilon.
\]

Using the density of \( D \) in \( X \), we find a vector \( y \in D \) with

\[
\| x - y \| \leq \left( C + \frac{C+1}{\tau} \right)^{-1} \varepsilon.
\]

Let \( \tilde{D} \) be the closure of \( D \) in \([\overline{D(A)}] \). We want to replace \( y \) by a vector \( z \) in \( \tilde{D} \) that is close to \( x \) for \( \| \cdot \|_A \). To this aim, we set

\[
z = \frac{1}{\tau} \int_0^\tau T(t)y \, dt.
\]

The integrand \( T(t)y \) takes values in \( D \) by assumption, and as above it is continuous in \([\overline{D(A)}] \). In view of the definition of the integral, \( z \) thus belongs to \( \tilde{D} \). The previous inequalities and Lemma 1.19 imply the bound

\[
\| x - z \|_A \leq \left\| x - \frac{1}{\tau} \int_0^\tau T(t)x \, dt \right\|_A + \frac{1}{\tau} \left\| \int_0^\tau T(t)(x - y) \, dt \right\|_A + \frac{1}{\tau} \left\| A \int_0^\tau T(t)(x - y) \, dt \right\|
\]

\[
\leq \varepsilon + \frac{C}{\tau} \int_0^\tau \| x - y \| \, dt + \frac{1}{\tau} \| (T(\tau) - I)(x - y) \|
\]

\[
\leq \varepsilon + \left( C + \frac{C+1}{\tau} \right) \| x - y \| \leq 2\varepsilon.
\]

Finally, there is a vector \( w \in D \) with \( \| z - w \|_A \leq \varepsilon \), and hence \( \| x - w \|_A \leq 3\varepsilon \). \( \square \)
The next result shows further important properties of dissipative operators following from the characterization in Proposition 1.33. In particular, the Hille–Yosida estimate (1.16) is reduced to a range condition, and a densely defined, dissipative operator has a dissipative closure.

**Proposition 1.39.** Let \( A \) be dissipative. The following assertions hold.

a) Let \( \lambda > 0 \). Then the operator \( \lambda I - A \) is injective and for \( y \in \rho(\lambda I - A) := (\lambda I - A)(D(A)) \) we have \( \| (\lambda I - A)^{-1} y \| \leq \frac{1}{\lambda} \| y \| \).

b) Let \( \lambda_0 I - A \) be surjective for some \( \lambda_0 > 0 \). Then \( A \) is closed, \( (0, \infty) \subseteq \rho(A) \), and \( \| R(\lambda, A) \| \leq \frac{1}{\lambda} \) for all \( \lambda > 0 \).

c) Assume that \( D(A) \) be dense in \( X \). Then \( A \) is closable and \( \overline{A} \) is also dissipative.

**Proof.** Assertion a) immediately follows from Proposition 1.33 where \( y = \lambda x - Ax \) for some \( x \in D(A) \).

Let the assumptions in b) hold. Part a) then implies that \( \lambda_0 I - A \) has an inverse with norm less than or equal to \( \frac{1}{\lambda_0} \). In particular, \( A \) is closed by Remark 1.17 b). Let \( \lambda \in (0, 2\lambda_0) \). Since \( |\lambda - \lambda_0| < \lambda_0 \leq \| R(\lambda_0, A) \|^{-1} \), Remark 1.17 c) shows that \( \lambda \) belongs to \( \rho(A) \). Step a) also yields the estimate \( \| R(\lambda, A) \| \leq 1/\lambda \). We can now iterate this argument, deriving assertion b).

c) Assume that \( D(A) \) is dense in \( X \). To check the closability of \( A \), we choose a sequence \( (x_n) \) in \( D(A) \) with limit 0 in \( X \) such that \( (Ax_n) \) converges in \( X \) to some \( y \in X \). By density, there are vectors \( y_k \) in \( D(A) \) tending to \( y \) in \( X \) as \( k \to \infty \). Take \( \lambda > 0 \) and \( n, k \in \mathbb{N} \). Proposition 1.33 implies the lower bound
\[
\| \lambda x_n - \lambda Ax_n + \lambda y_k - Ay_k \| = \| (\lambda I - A)(\lambda x_n + y_k) \| \geq \lambda \| \lambda x_n + y_k \|.
\]
Letting \( n \to \infty \), we deduce
\[
\| -\lambda y + \lambda y_k - Ay_k \| \geq \lambda \| y_k \|,
\]
\[
\| -y + y_k - \lambda^{-1} Ay_k \| \geq \| y_k \|.
\]
As \( \lambda \to \infty \), it follows that \( \| -y + y_k \| \geq \| y_k \| \). Taking the limit \( k \to \infty \), we conclude \( y = 0 \). Due to Lemma 1.36, the operator \( A \) is closable and for \( x \in D(\overline{A}) \) there are vectors \( z_n \in D(A) \) such that \( z_n \to x \) and \( Az_n \to \overline{A}x \) in \( X \) as \( n \to \infty \). Using Proposition 1.33, we now infer the estimate
\[
\| \lambda x - \overline{A}x \| = \lim_{n \to \infty} \| \lambda z_n - A z_n \| \geq \lim_{n \to \infty} \lambda \| z_n \| = \lambda \| x \|,
\]
and thus the dissipativity of \( \overline{A} \). \( \square \)

The following theorem by Lumer and Phillips from 1961 is the most important tool to verify the generator property in concrete cases (besides Theorem 2.25 below). To show that an operator \( A \) (or its closure) generates a contraction semigroup, one only has to establish the density of \( D(A) \), the dissipativity of \( A \), and that \( \lambda_0 I - A \) is surjective (or has dense range) for some \( \lambda_0 > 0 \). The first two properties can often be checked by direct computations using the given information on \( A \). The final range conditions are usually harder to show. One has to solve the 'stationary problem'
\[
\exists u \in D(A) : \quad \lambda_0 u - Au = f
\]
1.3. Dissipative operators

at least for \( f \) from a dense set of ‘good’ vectors. Fortunately, there are various tools to solve this problem which we partly discuss in the next section.

Based on our preparations, the Lumer–Phillips theorem can easily be deduced from the contraction case of the Hille–Yosida Theorem 1.27. In Example 1.50 we will see that one cannot omit the range conditions in parts a) or b).

**Theorem 1.40.** Let \( A \) be a linear and densely defined operator. The following assertions hold.

a) Let \( A \) be dissipative and \( \lambda_0 > 0 \) such that \( \lambda_0 I - A \) has dense range. Then \( \overline{A} \) generates a contraction semigroup.

b) Let \( A \) be dissipative and \( \lambda_0 > 0 \) such that \( \lambda_0 I - A \) is surjective. Then \( A \) generates a contraction semigroup.

c) Let \( A \) generate a contraction semigroup. Then \( A \) is dissipative, \( \mathbb{C}_+ \subseteq \rho(A) \), and \( \|R(\lambda, A)\| \leq 1/\text{Re}(\lambda) \) for \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C}_+ \).

One can replace ‘contraction’ by ‘\( \omega \)-contraction’ and \( A \) by \( A - \omega I \) for \( \omega \in \mathbb{R} \).

Operators satisfying the assumptions in assertion b) are called **maximally dissipative** or **m-dissipative**. (Such maps cannot have non-trivial dissipative extensions because of Lemma 1.24 and Proposition 1.39.) If a closed operator \( A \) satisfies the hypotheses of part a), then \( A \) generates a contraction semigroup since \( A = \overline{A} \). This variant of the result is often very useful in applications. Concerning the addendum, one can easily check that the closure of \( A - \omega I \) is equal to \( \overline{A} - \omega I \).

**Proof of Theorem 1.40.** Let the conditions in a) be true. Proposition 1.39 then tells us that \( A \) possesses a dissipative closure \( \overline{A} \). Let \( y \in X \). By assumption, there are vectors \( x_n \in D(A) \) such that the images \( y_n = \lambda_0 x_n - Ax_n \) tend to \( y \) in \( X \) as \( n \to \infty \). The dissipativity of \( A \) yields the inequality

\[
\|x_n - x_m\| \leq \frac{1}{\lambda_0} \| (\lambda_0 - A)(x_n - x_m) \| = \frac{1}{\lambda_0} \| y_n - y_m \|
\]

for all \( n, m \in \mathbb{N} \) thanks to Proposition 1.33. This means that \( (x_n) \) has a limit \( x \) in \( X \), and hence the vectors \( \overline{A} x_n = Ax_n = \lambda_0 x_n - y_n \) tend to \( \lambda_0 x - y \) as \( n \to \infty \). Since \( \overline{A} \) is closed, \( x \) belongs to \( D(\overline{A}) \) and satisfies \( \overline{A} x = \lambda_0 x - y \) so that \( \lambda_0 I - \overline{A} \) is surjective. Proposition 1.39 and Theorem 1.27 now imply the assertion.

By Proposition 1.39, \( A \) is closed if \( \lambda_0 I - A \) is surjective, and then part a) shows that \( A = \overline{A} \) generates a contraction semigroup. Assertion c) is a consequence of Propositions 1.33 and 1.21. The addendum follows by a rescaling argument based on Lemma 1.18. \( \square \)

We will reformulate the range condition in the Lumer–Phillips theorem using duality. To this aim, we recall the following concept from the lecture Spectral Theory. For a densely defined linear operator \( A \), we define its **adjoint** \( A^* \) by

\[
A^* x^* = y^* \quad \text{for all } x^* \in D(A^*), \quad \text{where}
\]

\[
D(A^*) = \{ x^* \in X^* \mid \exists y^* \in X^* \forall x \in D(A) : \langle Ax, x^* \rangle = \langle x, y^* \rangle \}.
\]

This means that \( \langle Ax, x^* \rangle = \langle x, A^* x^* \rangle \) for all \( x \in D(A) \) and \( x^* \in D(A^*) \). Recall from Remark 1.23 in [ST] that \( A^* \) is a closed linear operator. The domain \( D(A^*) \)
in (1.19) is defined in a ‘maximal way’ which is convenient for the theory, but for concrete operators it is often very difficult to calculate $D(A^*)$ explicitly. The next result replaces the range condition by the injectivity of $\lambda_0 I - A^*$ (or the dissipativity of $A^*$), cf. Theorem 1.24 in [ST]. In Example 1.50 we present a closed and densely defined dissipative operator having a non-dissipative adjoint.

**Corollary 1.41.** Let $A$ be dissipative and densely defined, and let $\lambda_0 I - A^*$ be injective for some $\lambda_0 > 0$. Then $\overline{A}$ generates a contraction semigroup. If $A^*$ is dissipative, then $\lambda I - A^*$ is injective for all $\lambda > 0$.

**Proof.** The addendum follows from Proposition 1.39. Let $\lambda_0 I - A^*$ be injective. Take a functional $x^* \in X^*$ such that $(\lambda_0 x - Ax, x^*) = 0$ for all $x \in D(A)$. From (1.19) we then deduce that $x^*$ belongs to $D(A^*)$ and $A^* x^* = \lambda_0 x^*$. Hence, $\lambda^* = 0$. The Hahn-Banach theorem now implies the density of $R(\lambda_0 I - A)$, see Corollary 5.13 in [FA]. Theorem 1.40 thus yields the assertion. □

Examples 1.34(c) and d) indicate that integration by parts is a very convenient tool to check dissipativity for differential operators in an $L^2$-context. To tackle such problems, we briefly discuss concepts and basic facts from Section 4.2 of [FA] and also from Chapter 3 of [ST], where the topic is treated in much greater detail. The material below is needed in many of our examples.

**Intermezzo 3: Weak derivatives and Sobolev spaces.** Let $\emptyset \neq G \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$ be open, $k \in \mathbb{N}$, $j \in \{1, \ldots, m\}$, and $p \in [1, \infty]$. A function $u \in L^p(G)$ has a weak derivative in $L^p(G)$ with respect to the $j$th coordinate if there is a map $v \in L^p(G)$ satisfying

$$\int_G u \partial_j \varphi \, dx = - \int_G v \varphi \, dx$$

for all $\varphi \in C_c^\infty(G)$. (Hence, by definition weak derivatives can be integrated by parts against ‘test functions’ $\varphi \in C_c^\infty(G)$.) The function $v$ is (up to a null function) uniquely determined by Lemma 4.15 in [FA]. We set $\partial_j u := v$ in the above situation and define the Sobolev space

$$W^{1,p}(G) = \{ u \in L^p(G) \mid \forall j \in \{1, \ldots, m\} \exists \partial_j u \in L^p(G) \}.$$ 

It is a Banach space when endowed with the norm

$$\| u \|_{1,p} = \begin{cases} \left( \| u \|_p^p + \sum_{j=1}^m | \partial_j u |_p^p \right)^{\frac{1}{p}}, & p < \infty, \\ \max_{j \in \{1, \ldots, m\}} \{ \| u \|_\infty, \| \partial_j u \|_\infty \}, & p = \infty, \end{cases}$$

see Proposition 4.19 of [FA]. (As usual we identify functions which are equal almost everywhere.) This norm is equivalent to the norm given by

$$\| u \|_p + \sum_{j=1}^m | \partial_j u |_p$$

due to Remark 4.16 in [FA]. Analogously one defines the Sobolev spaces $W^{k,p}(G)$ and higher-order weak derivatives $\partial^\alpha = \partial_1^{\alpha_1} \cdots \partial_m^{\alpha_m}$ for $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}_0^m$ and $|\alpha| = \alpha_1 + \cdots + \alpha_m \leq k$. We put $u = \partial^0 u$. One often writes $H^k$ instead of $W^{k,2}$ which is a Hilbert space. We summarize some properties of Sobolev spaces and weak derivatives.
a) Let \( u \in C^k(G) \) such that \( u \) and all its derivatives up to order \( k \) belong to \( L^p(G) \). Then \( u \) belongs to \( W^{k,p}(G) \) and its classical and weak derivatives coincide by Remark 4.16 of [FA] or Remark 3.2 of [ST].

b) Let \( u, u_n, v \in L^p(G) \) and \( \alpha \in \mathbb{N}_0^m \) such that \( u_n \to u \) and \( \partial^\alpha u_n \to v \) in \( L^p(G) \) as \( n \to \infty \). Then \( u \) possesses the weak derivative \( \partial^\alpha u = v \) as shown in the proofs of Lemma 4.17 in [FA] or Lemma 3.5 in [ST]. In other words, the operator \( \partial^\alpha \) with domain \( \{ u \in L^p(G) \mid \exists \partial^\alpha u \in L^p(G) \} \) is closed in \( L^p(G) \).

c) Let \( p < \infty \). Theorem 3.15 of [ST] says that \( C^\infty_c(\mathbb{R}^m) \) is dense in \( W^{k,p}(\mathbb{R}^m) \) and that \( C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^m) \cap W^{k,p}(\mathbb{R}^m) \) is dense in \( W^{k,p}(\mathbb{R}^m) \). (See also Theorem 4.21 of [FA] for the first result.)

d) Let \( -\infty \leq a < b \leq \infty \) and \( u \in L^p(a,b) \). Then the function \( u \) belongs to \( W^{1,p}(a,b) := W^{1,p}((a,b)) \) if and only if (a representative of) \( u \) is continuous and there is a map \( v \in L^p(a,b) \) satisfying

\[
u(t) = u(s) + \int_s^t v(\tau) \, d\tau \quad \text{for all } t, s \in (a, b).
\]

We then have \( u' = \partial u := \partial_1 u = v \) and \( u \) has a continuous extension to \( a \) (or \( b \)) if \( a > -\infty \) (or \( b < \infty \)). See Theorem 3.11 in [ST]. Actually, \( W^{1,p}(a,b) \) is continuously embedded into \( C_b(J) \) for \( J = (a,b) \).

We show the last claim first for the case \( a = -\infty \). In (1.20) we take \( s \in [t-2, t-1] \). Integrating over \( s \) and using Hölder’s inequality, we derive

\[
|u(t)| \leq \int_{t-2}^{t-1} |u(s)| \, ds + \int_{t-2}^t \int_s^t |u'(\tau)| \, d\tau \, ds
\]

\[
\leq \left( \int_{t-2}^{t-1} |u(s)|^p \, ds \right)^{\frac{1}{p}} + \int_{t-2}^t |u'(\tau)| \, d\tau \leq \|u\|_p + 2^p \|u'|_p.
\]

which yields the claim. The case \( (a, \infty) \) is treated in the same way using \( s \in [t+1, t+2] \). If \( (a, b) \) is bounded, we set \( c = (a + b)/2 \) and \( \delta = (b - a)/2 \).

Let \( t \in [c, b] \). Taking the integral over \( s \in [t-\delta, t] \) we derive

\[
\delta |u(t)| \leq \int_{t-\delta}^t |u(s)| \, ds + \int_{t-\delta}^t \int_s^t |u'(\tau)| \, d\tau \, ds.
\]

We can now estimate as above. If \( t \in [a, c] \), we use \( s = t + \delta \). The claim follows.

As an example for a weak derivative take a function \( u \in C_c(\mathbb{R}) \) whose restrictions \( u^+ \) and \( u^- \) to \( \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \) and \( \mathbb{R}_{< 0} \), respectively, are continuously differentiable. The map \( u \) then belongs to \( W^{1,p}(\mathbb{R}) \) for all \( p \in [1, \infty) \) and its derivative is given by \( (u^\pm)' \) on \( \mathbb{R}_\pm \) due Example 4.18 of [FA] where one also finds a multi-dimensional example, cf. Example 3.6 in [ST].

e) Let \( u \in W^{1,p}(G) \) and \( v \in W^{1,p}(G) \) with \( \frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{p'} = 1 \). Proposition 4.20 of [FA] yields that the product \( uv \) is an element of \( W^{1,1}(G) \) and satisfies the product rule \( \partial_j(uv) = u\partial_j v + v \partial_j u \). Analogous results hold for higher-order derivatives.

f) Let \( G \) have a compact boundary \( \partial G \) of class \( C^1 \). By the Trace Theorem 3.33 in [ST], the map \( W^{1,p}(G) \cap C(\overline{G}) \to L^p(\partial G, \, d\sigma) \); \( u \mapsto u|_{\partial G} \), has a continuous

\[1\text{The following proof was omitted in the lectures.} \]
extension \( \text{tr}: W^{1,p}(G) \to L^p(\partial G, d\sigma) \) called the \textit{trace operator}. Its kernel is the closure \( W^{1,p}_0(G) \) of the test functions \( C_c^\infty(G) \) in \( W^{1,p}(G) \). If \( \text{tr} u = 0 \), one says that \( u \) vanishes on \( \partial G \) ‘in the sense of trace.’

Let \( f \in W^{1,p}(G)^m \) and \( u \in W^{1,p}(G) \). The Divergence Theorem 3.35 in [ST] then yields

\[
\int_G u \, \text{div} \, f \, dx = - \int_G f \cdot \nabla u \, dx + \int_{\partial G} \text{tr}(u) \nu \cdot \text{tr}(f) \, d\sigma. \tag{1.21}
\]

Here \( \nu \) is the unit outer normal and the dot denotes the scalar product in \( \mathbb{R}^m \). We usually omit the trace operator in the boundary integral. If \( G = \mathbb{R}^m \) the formula is true without the boundary integral. \( \Diamond \)

Coming back to semigroups, we illustrate the above concepts by a simple example concerning generation properties of \( \frac{d}{ds} \) in \( L^2(\mathbb{R}) \).

\textbf{Example 1.43.} Let \( X = L^2(\mathbb{R}) \) and \( A = \frac{d}{ds} \) with \( D(A) = C^1_c(\mathbb{R}) \).

1) The operators \( \pm A \) are densely defined and dissipative by Example 1.34. Proposition 1.39 then yields their closability and the dissipativity of their closures, where \( -A \) has the closure \( -\overline{A} \). We next show that \( \overline{A} = (\partial, W^{1,2}(\mathbb{R})) \).

For each \( u \in D(\overline{A}) \) there are functions \( u_n \in C^1_c(\mathbb{R}) \) such that \( u_n \to u \) and \( u'_n = Au_n \to A u \) in \( L^2(\mathbb{R}) \) as \( n \to \infty \). In view of Remark 1.42 b), the map \( u \) thus belongs to \( W^{1,2}(\mathbb{R}) \) and \( \overline{A} u = u' \); i.e., \( \overline{A} \subseteq (\partial, W^{1,2}(\mathbb{R})) \). For the converse, take \( u \in W^{1,2}(\mathbb{R}) \). Remark 1.42 c) then provides a sequence \( (u_n) \) in \( C^1_c(\mathbb{R}) \) with limit \( u \) in \( W^{1,2}(\mathbb{R}) \). Hence, \( u_n \to u \) and \( u'_n \to u' \) in \( L^2(\mathbb{R}) \) so that \( u \) is an element of \( D(\overline{A}) \).

2) We compute \( \overline{A}^* \). Let \( u, v \in W^{1,2}(\mathbb{R}) \). Formula (1.21) then yields

\[
\langle \overline{A} u, v \rangle = \int_{\mathbb{R}} u' v \, ds = - \int_{\mathbb{R}} u v' \, ds = \langle u, -\partial v \rangle,
\]

so that \( (\partial, W^{1,2}(\mathbb{R})) \) is a restriction of \( \overline{A}^* \), see (1.19). Conversely, let \( v \in D(\overline{A}^*) \). The functions \( v \) and \( \overline{A}^* v \) thus belong to \( L^2(\mathbb{R}) \) and satisfy

\[
\int_{\mathbb{R}} u \overline{A}^* v \, ds = \langle u, \overline{A}^* v \rangle = \langle Au, v \rangle = \int_{\mathbb{R}} u' v \, ds
\]

for all \( u \in C_c^\infty(\mathbb{R}) \subseteq D(A) \subseteq D(\overline{A}) \), which means that \( v \in W^{1,2}(\mathbb{R}) \) and \( \overline{A}^* v = -v' = -\overline{A} v \). As a result, \( \overline{A}^* = -\overline{A} \). Corollary 1.41 now shows that \( \pm \overline{A} \) generate contraction semigroups.

3) To determine these semigroups, we recall from Example 1.9 that the translation group \( T(t)f = f(\cdot + t) \) on \( X \) has a generator \( B \). For \( f \in D(A) \) the functions \( w(t) = \frac{1}{t}(T(t)f - f) \) converge uniformly to \( f' \) as \( t \to 0^+ \). Moreover, the supports \( \text{supp} \, w(t) \) are contained in the bounded set \( \text{supp} \, f + [-1,0] \) for all \( 0 \leq t \leq 1 \), so that \( w(t) \) tends to \( f' \) in \( X \). This means \( A \subseteq B \) and so \( \overline{A} \subseteq B \). Lemma 1.24 now yields \( \overline{A} = B \) and hence \( \overline{A} \) generates \( T(\cdot) \). \( \Diamond \)

We conclude this section with a discussion of isometric groups.

\textbf{Corollary 1.44.} Let \( A \) be linear. The following statements are equivalent.

a) The operator \( A \) generates an isometric \( C_0 \)-group \( T(\cdot) \); i.e., \( \|T(t)x\| = \|x\| \)

for all \( x \in X \) and \( t \in \mathbb{R} \).
b) The operator $A$ is closed, densely defined, $\pm A$ are dissipative, and $\lambda_0 I \pm A$ are surjective for some $\lambda_0 > 0$.

c) The operator $A$ is closed, densely defined, $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$ belongs to $\rho(A)$, and $\|R(\lambda, A)\| \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \lambda^2}}$ for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$.

In this case, one can replace in c) the set $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$ by $\mathbb{C} \setminus i\mathbb{R}$ and $|\lambda|$ by $|\text{Re} \lambda|$.

Proof. The Lumer-Phillips Theorem 1.40 says that b) holds if and only if $A$ and $-A$ generate contraction semigroups. Theorem 1.30 thus implies the equivalence of assertions b) and c), the addendum, and that b) is true if and only if $A$ generates a contractive $C_0$-group $T(\cdot)$. It remains to show that a contractive $C_0$-group $T(\cdot)$ is already isometric. Indeed, in this case we have

$$||T(t)x|| \leq ||x|| = ||T(-t)T(t)x|| \leq ||T(-t)|| ||T(t)x|| \leq ||T(t)x||$$

for all $x \in X$ and $t \in \mathbb{R}$, so that $T(t)$ is isometric. \hfill \Box

We want to show an important variant of the above corollary on Hilbert spaces which requires a few more concepts from [ST]. Let $X$ be a Hilbert space. For a linear operator on $X$ with dense domain we define the Hilbert space adjoint $A'$ of $A$ as in (1.19) replacing the duality pairing $(x, x')$ by the inner product $(x|y)$. A linear operator $A$ on $X$ is called symmetric if

$$\forall x, y \in D(A) : \ (Ax|y) = (x|Ay),$$

which means that $A \subseteq A'$ if $D(A)$ is dense. If $A$ is densely defined, we say that it is selfadjoint if $A = A'$; i.e., if $A$ is symmetric and

$$D(A) = \{ y \in X \mid \exists z \in X \ \forall x \in D(A) : (Ax|y) = (x|z) \}$$

$$= \{ y \in X \mid (D(A), \| \cdot \|) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}; \ x \mapsto (Ax|y), \ \text{is continuous} \}.$$  

(The last equality is a consequence Riesz’ representation Theorem 3.10 in [FA].) A densely defined, linear operator $A$ is called skewadjoint if $A = -A'$ which is equivalent to the selfadjointness of $\text{i}A$. Finally, $T \in B(X)$ is unitary if it has the inverse $T^{-1} = T'$.

We recall a very useful criterion from Theorem 4.7 of [ST]. A symmetric, densely defined, closed operator $A$ is selfadjoint if and only if its spectrum $\sigma(A)$ belongs to $\mathbb{R}$, which in turn follows from the condition $\rho(A) \cap \mathbb{R} \neq \emptyset$.

As in Remark 1.23 in [ST] one can check that $A'$ is a closed linear map. Hence, every densely defined, symmetric operator is closable with $\overline{A} \subseteq A'$ (cf. Lemma 1.36) and each selfadjoint operator is closed. Let $A$ be symmetric and densely defined. Take $u, v \in D(\overline{A})$. There are sequences $(u_n)$ and $(v_n)$ in $D(A)$ with limits $u$ and $v$ in $X$, respectively, such that $Au_n \rightarrow \overline{A}u$ and $Av_n \rightarrow \overline{A}v$ in $X$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$. We then compute

$$(\overline{A}u|v) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (Au_n|v_n) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (u_n|Av_n) = (u|\overline{A}v),$$

so that also the closure $\overline{A}$ is symmetric.

There are densely defined, symmetric, closed operators that are not selfadjoint. (By Example 4.8 of [ST] this is the case for $A = i\partial$ with $D(A) = \{ u \in W^{1,2}(0, \infty) \mid u(0) = 0 \}$ on $X = L^2(0, \infty)$. Here one has $D(A') = W^{1,2}(0, \infty)$.)

The next result due to Stone from 1930 belongs to the mathematical foundations of quantum mechanics.
1.4. Examples with the Laplacian

Theorem 1.45. Let $X$ be a Hilbert space and $A$ be a linear operator on $X$ with a dense domain. Then $A$ generates a $C_0$-group of unitary operators if and only if $A$ is skewadjoint.

Proof. 1) Let $A' = -A$. Hence, $A$ is closed. For $x \in D(A)$, we have $J(x) = \{\varphi_x\}$ with $\varphi_x = (|x|)$ by Example 1.31. We thus obtain

$$\langle Ax, \varphi_x \rangle = \langle Ax | x \rangle = -(x | Ax) = -\langle Ax | x \rangle = -\langle Ax, \varphi_x \rangle$$

and so $\text{Re}\langle Ax, \varphi_x \rangle = 0$. Therefore, $A$, $A' = -A$, and $(-A)' = A$ are dissipative. From Corollary 1.41 we then deduce that $A$ and $A'$ generate contraction semigroups. Corollary 1.44 now shows that $A$ generates a $C_0$-group $T(\cdot)$ of invertible isometries, implying that each $T(t)$ is unitary by Proposition 5.52 in [FA].

2) Let $A$ generate a unitary $C_0$-group $T(\cdot)$. We infer $T(t)' = T(t)^{-1} = T(-t)$ for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$ by Remark 1.2, and hence $T(\cdot)'$ is a unitary $C_0$-group with the generator $-A$. For $x, y \in D(A)$ we thus obtain

$$\langle Ax | y \rangle = \lim_{t \to 0} \left( \frac{1}{2} T(t)(x - y) \right) = \lim_{t \to 0} \left( x \frac{1}{2} (T(t)'(y - y)) \right) = (x | -Ay).$$

This means that $-A \subseteq A'$. We further know from Theorem 1.30 that $\sigma(A)$ and $\sigma(-A)$ are contained in $i\mathbb{R}$. Equation (4.2) in [ST] then yields $\sigma(A') = \sigma(A) \subseteq i\mathbb{R}$. The assertion $-A = A'$ now follows from Lemma 1.24.

1.4. Examples with the Laplacian

In this section we discuss generation and related properties of the Laplacian $\Delta = \partial_x^2 + \cdots + \partial_m^2 = \text{div} \nabla$ in various settings. To apply the Lumer–Phillips Theorem 1.40, we have to check three conditions. The density of the domain often follows from standard results on function spaces. With the right tools one can usually verify dissipativity in a straightforward way (imposing appropriate boundary conditions). For the range condition one has to solve the ‘elliptic problem’ $u - \Delta u = f$ plus boundary conditions for given $f$. Using differing methods, this will be done first on $\mathbb{R}^m$, then on intervals, and finally with Dirichlet boundary conditions on bounded domains. As we will see in the next chapter, these results will allow us to solve diffusion equations, actually with improved regularity. We will further use the Dirichlet–Laplacian in the wave equation, cf. Example 1.53. We strive for a self-contained presentation (employing the lectures Functional Analysis and Spectral Theory), but for certain additional facts we have to cite deeper results from the theory of partial differential equations.

A) The Laplacian on $\mathbb{R}^m$. Since the Laplacian has constant coefficients, on the full space $\mathbb{R}^m$ the Fourier transform is a very powerful tool to deal with it, for instance, to check the range condition. We first recall relevant results from Spectral Theory, taken from Sections 5.1 and 5.2 of [FA15]. For a function $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^m)$ we define its Fourier transform

$$(\mathcal{F}f)(\xi) = \hat{f}(\xi) := \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{m/2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^m} e^{-i\xi \cdot x} f(x) \, dx, \quad \xi \in \mathbb{R}^m,$$
where we put \( \xi \cdot x = \sum_{j=1}^{m} \xi_j x_j \). This formula clearly defines a function \( \mathcal{F}f : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m \) which is bounded by \((2\pi)^{-m/2}\|f\|_1\). Actually, \( \mathcal{F}f \) belongs to \( C_0(\mathbb{R}^m) \) by Corollary 5.8 in [FA15]. For further investigations the Schwartz space 

\[
S_m = \{ f \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^m) \mid \forall k \in \mathbb{N}_0, \alpha \in \mathbb{N}_0^m : p_{k,\alpha}(f) := \sup_{x \in \mathbb{R}^m} |x|^{\frac{k}{2}} |\partial^\alpha f(x)| < \infty \}.
\]

turns out to be very useful.

By Remark 5.6 of [FA15] the family of seminorms \( \{ p_{k,\alpha} \mid k \in \mathbb{N}_0, \alpha \in \mathbb{N}_0^m \} \) yields a complete metric on \( S_m \). The space \( C_S^\infty(\mathbb{R}^m) \) and also the Gaussian \( \gamma(x) = e^{-|x|^2} \) are contained in \( S_m \). Proposition 5.10 and Lemma 5.7 of [FA15] show that the restriction \( \mathcal{F} : S_m \rightarrow S_m \) is bijective and continuous with the continuous inverse given by

\[
\mathcal{F}^{-1}g(y) = \left( \mathcal{F}g \right)(-y) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{\frac{m}{2}}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^m} e^{iy\cdot\xi} g(\xi) \, d\xi, \quad y \in \mathbb{R}^m,
\]

for \( g \in S_m \). The crucial fact in our context is Plancherel’s theorem which says that one can extend \( \mathcal{F} : S_m \rightarrow S_m \) to a unitary map \( \mathcal{F}_2 : L^2(\mathbb{R}^m) \rightarrow L^2(\mathbb{R}^m) \) satisfying \( \mathcal{F}_2 f = \mathcal{F}f \) for \( f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^m) \cap L^1(\mathbb{R}^m) \), see Theorem 5.11 in [FA15].

We stress that \( \mathcal{F}_2 f \) is not given by the above integral formula if \( f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^m) \) is not integrable; but we still write \( \mathcal{F} \) instead of \( \mathcal{F}_2 \) and \( f \) instead of \( \mathcal{F}_2 f \).

We recall some of the facts proved in Theorem 5.11 and Proposition 5.10 of [FA15]. Let \( f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^m) \), \( h \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^m) \), and \( \varphi, \psi \in S_m \). First, we again have the inversion formula \( \mathcal{F}^{-1}f(y) = \mathcal{F}f(-y) \) for \( y \in \mathbb{R}^m \). We define the convolution

\[
(h * f)(x) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^m} h(x-y)f(y) \, dy, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^m.
\]

The function \( h * f \) belongs to \( L^2(\mathbb{R}^m) \) and satisfies

\[
\mathcal{F}(h * f) = (2\pi)^\frac{m}{2} \hat{h} \hat{f}, \quad \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{F}^{-1}(h)f) = (2\pi)^{-\frac{m}{2}} h * \hat{f}.
\]

Moreover, the convolution \( \varphi * \psi \) is an element of \( S_m \).

To apply the Fourier transform to differential operators, one needs the following properties. Lemma 5.7 of [FA15] yields the differentiation formulas

\[
\mathcal{F}(\partial^\alpha u) = i^{|\alpha|} \xi^\alpha \mathcal{F}u \quad \text{and} \quad \partial^\alpha \mathcal{F}u = (-i)^{|\alpha|} \mathcal{F}(x^\alpha u)
\]

for \( u \in S_m \) and \( \alpha \in \mathbb{N}_0^m \), where we write \( \xi^\alpha \) for the map \( \xi \mapsto \xi^\alpha = \xi_1^\alpha_1 \ldots \xi_m^\alpha_m \) and so on. Plancherel’s theorem and (1.23) imply the inequalities

\[
\|u\|_{k,2}^2 = \sum_{|\alpha| \leq k} \| \mathcal{F} \partial^\alpha u \|_2^2 = \sum_{|\alpha| \leq k} \| \xi^\alpha \hat{u} \|_2^2 = \int_{\mathbb{R}^m} \sum_{|\alpha| \leq k} |\xi^\alpha|^2 \| \hat{u} \|_2^2 \, d\xi
\]

\[
\leq c_1 \left( \| u \|_2^2 + \| \xi^\frac{k}{2} \hat{u} \|_2^2 \right),
\]

\[
\geq c_2 \left( \| u \|_2^2 + \| \xi^\frac{k}{2} \hat{u} \|_2^2 \right)
\]

for \( u \in S_m \) and constants \( c_j > 0 \). Taking into account the density of \( S_m \) in \( W^{k,2}(\mathbb{R}^m) \), see Remark 1.42, one can then deduce the crucial description

\[
W^{k,2}(\mathbb{R}^m) = \{ u \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^m) \mid |\xi|^k \hat{u} \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^m) \},
\]

\[
\|u\|_{k,2} \cong \|u\|_2 + \|\xi^\frac{k}{2} \hat{u}\|_2
\]

(1.24)
for \( k \in \mathbb{N}_0 \) and also that first part of (1.23) is true for \( u \in W^{[0,2]}(\mathbb{R}^m) \). Actually, the inclusion ‘\( \supseteq \)’ requires another argument, see Theorem 5.21 in [FA15].

To check the range condition for the Laplacian on \( \mathbb{R}^m \), we take \( f \in S_m \) and \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{R}_{\leq 0} \). We look for a function \( u \in S_m \) satisfying \( \lambda u - \Delta u = f \). (Observe that \( \Delta u \) belongs to \( S_m \) in \( u \in S_m \).) Because of formula (1.23), it is equivalent to solve the problem

\[
\hat{f} = \lambda \hat{u} - \sum_{k=1}^{m} i^2 \xi_k^2 \hat{u} = (\lambda + |\xi|^2) \hat{u}
\]

for \( u \in S_m \). The unique solution of this equation is given by \( \hat{u} = (\lambda + |\xi|^2)^{-1} \hat{f} \), which is an element of \( S_m \) by Lemma 5.7 of [FA15]. We now set

\[
u := R(\lambda) f = \mathcal{F}^{-1} \left( \frac{\hat{f}}{\lambda + |\xi|^2} \right)
\] (1.25)

Since \( \mathcal{F} \) is bijective on \( S_m \), this function belongs to \( S_m \subseteq W^{2,2}(\mathbb{R}^m) \). From (1.23) and the formula for \( \mathcal{F}^{-1} \) we thus deduce

\[
\lambda u - \Delta u = \mathcal{F}^{-1} \left( \frac{\lambda}{\lambda + |\xi|^2} \hat{f} - i^2 \frac{|\xi|^2}{\lambda + |\xi|^2} \hat{f} \right) = f.
\] (1.26)

(Here we need \( f \in S_m \), unless we extend the second part (1.23) to a suitable larger class of functions.) Based on these observations we can now establish our first generation result for the Laplacian.

**Example 1.46.** Let \( E = L^2(\mathbb{R}^m) \), \( A = \Delta \), and \( D(A) = W^{2,2}(\mathbb{R}^m) \). The operator \( A \) generates a contraction semigroup on \( E \) and it is selfadjoint. Moreover, its graph norm is equivalent to that of \( W^{2,2}(\mathbb{R}^m) \).

**Proof.** The asserted norm equivalence follows from (1.24) and Plancherel’s theorem since \( \mathcal{F}(\Delta u) = -|\xi|^2 \hat{u} \) by (1.23) for \( u \in W^{2,2}(\mathbb{R}^m) \). The domain \( D(A) \) is dense in \( E \) since it contains \( C_c^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^m) \), see Proposition 4.13 of [FA].

Let \( f \in E \) and \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{R}_{\leq 0} \). To check the range condition, we estimate

\[
\left| \frac{\hat{f}}{\lambda + |\xi|^2} \right| \leq c_\lambda |\hat{f}|, \quad \text{with} \quad c_\lambda := \begin{cases} \frac{1}{|\lambda|} \quad &\text{Re } \lambda \geq 0, \\ \frac{1}{|\text{Im } \lambda|} \quad &\text{Re } \lambda < 0. \end{cases}
\]

Because of Plancherel’s theorem, the term in parentheses in (1.25) thus belongs to \( E \), so that we can define \( u = R(\lambda) f \in E \) as in (1.25). Using Plancherel once more, we also obtain

\[
\|u\|_2 = \|\hat{u}\|_2 \leq c_\lambda \|f\|_2; \quad \text{i.e.,} \quad \|R(\lambda)\|_{B(E)} \leq c_\lambda.
\] (1.27)

We further compute \( |\xi|^2 |\hat{u}| = |\xi|^2 |(\lambda + |\xi|^2)^{-1}| |\hat{f}| \leq c_\lambda^\prime |\hat{f}| \) for some constants \( c_\lambda^\prime \). Formula (1.24) thus implies that \( u \) belongs to \( W^{2,2}(\mathbb{R}^m) \) with norm \( \|u\|_{2,2} \leq c(\|u\|_2 + \|\xi|^2 \hat{u}\|_2) \leq c_\lambda \|f\|_2 \). As a result, \( R(\lambda) \) maps \( E \) continuously into \( W^{2,2}(\mathbb{R}^m) \).

To use (1.26), we take functions \( f_n \in S_m \) tending to \( f \) in \( E \) as \( n \to \infty \). The maps \( u_n := R(\lambda) f_n \in S_m \) then converge to \( u \) in \( W^{2,2}(\mathbb{R}^m) \) and satisfy \( \lambda u_n - \Delta u_n = f_n \) by (1.26). Letting \( n \to \infty \), we derive the equation \( \lambda u - \Delta u = f \) so that \( \lambda I - A \) is bijective with the bounded inverse \( R(\lambda) \). Hence, \( A \) is closed by
Remark 1.17 and so the spectrum $\sigma(A)$ is thus contained in $\mathbb{R}_{\leq 0}$, and inequality (1.27) implies the Hille-Yosida estimate for $\lambda > 0$. As a result, $E$ generates a contraction semigroup on $A$ by Theorem 1.27.

Let $u, v \in W^{2,2}(\mathbb{R}^m)$. Formulas (1.21) and $\Delta = \nabla \nabla$ yield

$$
(Au|v) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^m} \nabla(\nabla u) \nabla v \, dx = -\int_{\mathbb{R}^m} \nabla u \cdot \nabla v \, dx = \int_{\mathbb{R}^m} u \nabla(\nabla v) \, dx = (u|Av),
$$

so that $A$ is symmetric. Since $\sigma(A) \subseteq \mathbb{R}_{\leq 0}$, the selfadjointness of $A$ now follows from Theorem 4.7 of [ST]. □

We stress that the above norm equivalence says that one can bound in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^m)$ each derivative of $u \in D(A)$ up to order 2 just by $u$ and the sum $\Delta u$ of unmixed second derivatives. In particular, if $m \geq 2$ the possible cancellations in $\Delta u$ do not play a role! On $C_0(\mathbb{R}^m)$ the situation is quite different. Here we use of the version of the Lumer–Phillips theorem involving the closure. With the available tools we can compute its domain only for $m = 1$, see the comments below.

**Example 1.47.** Let $E = C_0(\mathbb{R}^m)$, $D(A_0) = \{ u \in C^2(\mathbb{R}^m) \mid u, \Delta u \in E \}$, and $A_0 = \Delta$. The operator $A_0$ has a closure $A$ that generates a contraction semigroup on $E$. If $m = 1$, we have $Au = u''$ and $D(A) = D(A_0) = C_0^2(\mathbb{R}) := \{ u \in C^2(\mathbb{R}) \mid u, u', u'' \in E \}$.

**Proof.** The domain of $A_0$ is dense in $E$ because of $C_c^\infty(\mathbb{R}^m) \subseteq D(A_0)$, cf. the proof of Proposition 4.13 in [FA]. Let $u \in D(A_0)$. Example 1.31 says that the functional $\varphi = u(x_0)\delta_{x_0}$ belongs to $J(u)$, where $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^m$ satisfies $|u(x_0)| = \|u\|_\infty$. Setting $h = \text{Re}(u(x_0)u) \in D(A_0)$, we obtain

$$
\text{Re} \langle A_0u, \varphi \rangle = \text{Re}(u(x_0)\Delta u(x_0)) = \Delta h(x_0).
$$

As in Example 1.34 we see that $h(x_0)$ is a maximum of $h$. By Analysis 2, the matrix $D^2h(x_0)$ is thus negative semidefinite and hence $\Delta h(x_0) = \text{tr}(D^2h(x_0)) \leq 0$; i.e., $A_0$ is dissipative. Equation (1.26) next shows that the range of $I - A_0$ contains the dense subspace $S_m$. The first assertion now follows from the Lumer–Phillips Theorem 1.40.

Let $m = 1$ and $u \in D(A)$. Since $A = \overline{A}_0$ there are functions $u_n \in D(A_0)$ such that $u_n \to u$ and $u_n'' \to A u$ in $E$ as $n \to \infty$. We further need to control the first derivative. To achieve this aim, we look at an interval $J$ of length $|J| > 0$, a function $v \in C^2(J)$ with bounded $v$ and $v''$, $\delta \in (0, |J|)$, and points $r, s \in J$ with $\delta < s - r < 2\delta$. Taylor’s theorem provides a number $\sigma \in (r, s)$ such that

$$
v(s) = v(r) + v'(r)(s - r) + \frac{1}{2} v''(\sigma (s - r)^2),$$

$$v'(r) = \frac{v(s) - v(r)}{s - r} - \frac{1}{2} v''(\sigma)(s - r).$$

The last equation yields

$$
|v'(r)| \leq \frac{2}{\delta} \max_{\tau \in [r,r+\delta]} |v(\tau)| + \delta \max_{\tau \in [r,r+\delta]} |v''(\tau)|, \quad (1.28)
$$

$$
\|v'\|_\infty \leq \frac{2}{\delta} \|v\|_\infty + \delta \|v''\|_\infty.
$$

\[\footnote{Actually we have the equality $\sigma(A) = \mathbb{R}_{\leq 0}$ by Example 3.41 in [ST].}\]
The equivalence of the norms can be deduced from (1.28). Let we find a map $\tilde{L}u$ and set $x = \lambda u = f$. As a result, $u$ belongs to $C^1(\mathbb{R})$ with $u' = f \in E$. Using $u''_n \rightarrow Au$, we then conclude $u \in C^2(\mathbb{R})$ and $Au = u''$. □

For $m \geq 2$ the domain $D(A)$ is not $C^2_0(\mathbb{R}^m)$ in Example 1.47. To make this fact plausible, we look at the function

$$\tilde{u}(x, y) = \begin{cases} (x^2 - y^2) \ln(x^2 + y^2), & (x, y) \neq (0, 0), \\ 0, & (x, y) = (0, 0). \end{cases}$$

By a straightforward computation, the second derivative

$$\partial_{xx}\tilde{u}(x, y) = 2\ln(x^2 + y^2) + \frac{4x^2}{x^2 + y^2} + \frac{(6x^2 - 2y^2)(x^2 + y^2) - 4x^2(x^2 - y^2)}{(x^2 + y^2)^2}$$

is unbounded on $B(0, 1)$, but the functions $\tilde{u}$, $\nabla \tilde{u}$, and $\Delta \tilde{u}(x, y) = \frac{8x^2 - 2y^2}{x^2 + y^2}$ are bounded on $B(0, 2)$. We take a smooth map $\varphi$ with $\text{supp} \varphi \subseteq B(0, 2)$ which is equal to 1 on $B(0, 1)$. Then the maps $u = \varphi \tilde{u}$ and

$$u - \Delta u = \varphi(\tilde{u} - \Delta \tilde{u}) - 2\nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla \tilde{u} - \tilde{u} \Delta \varphi$$

are bounded and have compact support on $\mathbb{R}^m$, but $u$ does not belong to $W^{2, \infty}(\mathbb{R}^m)$. One can construct an analogous example in $C_0(\mathbb{R}^m)$ instead of $L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^m)$ using $\ln \ln$.

With much more effort and deeper tools, Corollary 3.1.9 in [Lu] shows that the operator $A_1 = \Delta$ with domain

$$D(A_1) = \{u \in C_0(\mathbb{R}^m) \mid \forall p \in (1, \infty), r > 0 : u \in W^{2, p}(B(0, r)), \Delta u \in C_0(\mathbb{R}^m)\}$$

is closed in $E$ and that $\rho(A_1)$ contains a halfline $(\omega, \infty)$. Since $D(A_0) \subseteq D(A_1)$, we first obtain $A = \overline{A_0} \subseteq A_1$, and then $A = A_1$ by Lemma 1.24.

**B) The second derivative on an interval.** In the one-dimensional case the equation $\lambda u - \Delta u = f$ with boundary conditions becomes an ordinary boundary value problem, which we can solve explicitly and thus obtain a concrete (a bit lengthy) formula for the resolvent. We only look at Dirichlet conditions, others can be treated similarly. We start with the sup-norm case.

**Example 1.48.** Let $E = C_0(0, 1)$, $D(A) = \{u \in C^2(0, 1) \mid u, u'' \in E\}$, and $Au = u''$. The operator $A$ generates a contraction semigroup on $E$, and its graph norm is equivalent to that of $C^2([0, 1])$.

**Proof.** The equivalence of the norms can be deduced from (1.28). Let $f \in E$. Take $\varepsilon > 0$. As in Example 1.9 we find a map $\tilde{f} \in C_c(0, 1)$ with $\|f - \tilde{f}\|_\infty \leq \varepsilon$. Moreover, proceeding as in the proof of Proposition 4.13 in [FA] one constructs a function $g \in C^\infty_c(0, 1) \subseteq D(A)$ satisfying $\|\tilde{f} - g\|_\infty \leq \varepsilon$. Hence, $A$ is densely defined. The dissipativity of $A$ is shown as in Example 1.47, where the argument $x_0$ of the maximum of $|u|$ belongs to $(0, 1)$ since the cases $x_0 \in \{0, 1\}$ are excluded by the boundary conditions.

Let $\tilde{f} \in E$. We extend it by 0 to a function $f$ in $C_c(\mathbb{R}) \subseteq L^2(\mathbb{R})$. Let $\lambda > 0$ and set $\mu = \sqrt{\lambda} > 0$. We then define

$$v = R(\lambda)f = \mathcal{F}^{-1}((\mu^2 + \xi^2)^{-1} \tilde{f}) = (2\pi)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \mathcal{F}^{-1}(\mu^2 + \xi^2)^{-1} \ast f =: k \ast f \in W^{2, 2}(\mathbb{R})$$
as in (1.25) and Example 1.46, where we also use (1.22). (To apply (1.22), we need that $k$ is integrable but this is checked in the next formula in display.) Using the transformation $\eta = \xi/\mu$ and Example 3.15 of [A4], we compute

$$k(s) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{e^{is\xi}}{\mu^2 + \xi^2} \, d\xi = \frac{1}{2\pi\mu^2} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{e^{is\xi}}{1 + \xi^2\mu^{-2}} \, d\xi = \frac{1}{2\pi\mu} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{e^{i\mu s\eta}}{1 + \eta^2} \, d\eta = \frac{e^{-\mu|s|}}{2\mu}$$

for $s \in [0,1]$. We thus obtain

$$v(s) = \frac{1}{2\mu} \int_{0}^{1} e^{-\mu|s-\tau|} f(\tau) \, d\tau, \quad s \in [0,1],$$

recalling that $\text{supp } f \subseteq [0,1]$. As in Example 1.49 it is easy to check that this function belongs to $C^2([0,1])$ and solves the equation $\lambda v - v'' = f$ even for $\lambda \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{R}_{\leq 0}$, but it does not satisfy the boundary conditions $v(0) = 0 = v(1)$ except for special $f$. To fulfill them, we make the ansatz

$$u(s) = a(f,\mu)e^{is} + b(f,\mu)e^{-is} + v(s)$$

for $s \in [0,1]$ and unknown coefficients $a(f,\mu), b(f,\mu) \in \mathbb{C}$. Observe that we still have $u \in C^2([0,1])$ and $\lambda u - u'' = f$ even for $\lambda \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{R}_{\leq 0}$. We now want to choose $a(f,\mu)$ and $b(f,\mu)$ such that $u \in D(A)$ which means that $u(0) = 0 = u(1)$. This condition is equivalent to the linear system

$$a(f,\mu) + b(f,\mu) = \frac{1}{2\mu} \int_{0}^{1} e^{-\mu \tau} f(\tau) \, d\tau,$$

$$a(f,\mu)e^{\mu} + b(f,\mu)e^{-\mu} = \frac{1}{2\mu} \int_{0}^{1} e^{\mu(\tau-1)} f(\tau) \, d\tau,$$

which has the unique solution

$$\left( \begin{array}{c} a(f,\mu) \\ b(f,\mu) \end{array} \right) = \frac{1}{2\mu(e^{-\mu} - e^{\mu})} \left( \begin{array}{c} e^{-\mu} \int_{0}^{1} (e^{\mu \tau} - e^{-\mu \tau}) f(\tau) \, d\tau \\ e^{-\mu} \int_{0}^{1} (e^{\mu \tau} - e^{-\mu \tau}) f(\tau) \, d\tau \end{array} \right).$$

As a result, $\lambda I - A$ is bijective even for $\lambda \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{R}_{\leq 0}$. The Lumer–Phillips Theorem 1.40 now implies that $A$ is closed and generates a contraction semigroup on $E$. We also obtain the formula

$$R(\lambda, A)f(s) = a(f,\mu)e^{is} + b(f,\mu)e^{-is} + \frac{1}{2\mu} \int_{0}^{1} e^{-\mu|s-\tau|} f(\tau) \, d\tau \quad (1.29)$$

for $s \in [0,1], f \in C_0(0,1)$, and $\lambda \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{R}_{\leq 0}$.

We next show the analogous result for $L^p(0,1)$. Here we check dissipativity on $L^p$ now also for $p \neq 2$.

**Example 1.49.** Let $E = L^p(0,1), 1 \leq p < \infty, Au = u''$, and

$$D(A) = \{ u \in W^{2,p}(0,1) \mid u(0) = u(1) = 0 \} = W^{2,p}(0,1) \cap W^{1,p}_0(0,1).$$

(Remark 1.42 yields $W^{1,p}(0,1) \hookrightarrow C([0,1])$. The operator $A$ generates a contraction semigroup on $E$ and its graph norm is equivalent to $\| \cdot \|_{2,p}$. )
The last assertion follows from Proposition 3.31 of [ST], cf. (1.28). The domain $D(A)$ is dense due to Proposition 4.13 in [FA] since it contains $C^\infty_0(0, 1)$. One can extend the operator $R(\lambda, A)$ from (1.29) to a map $R(\lambda)$ on $E = L^p(0, 1)$ for $\lambda \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{R}_{\leq 0}$. We rewrite
\[ \tilde{v}(s) := \int_0^1 e^{-\mu|s-t|} f(t) \, dt = e^{-\mu s} \int_0^s e^{\mu t} f(t) \, dt + e^{\mu s} \int_s^1 e^{-\mu t} f(t) \, dt \]
for $f \in E$ and $s \in [0, 1]$. Using (1.20), we can now differentiate
\[ \tilde{v}'(s) = -\mu e^{-\mu s} \int_0^s e^{\mu t} f(t) \, dt + f(s) + \mu e^{\mu s} \int_s^1 e^{-\mu t} f(t) \, dt - f(s). \]
Since the summands $\pm f(s)$ cancel, $\tilde{v} = 2\mu v$ belongs to $C^1([0, 1])$. Analogously one checks that $v'' \in L^p(0, 1)$ satisfies $\lambda v - v'' = f$. As in the previous example one then shows that $u = R(\lambda) f$ is an element of $D(A)$ and fulfills $\lambda u - u'' = f$.

To apply the Lumer Phillips theorem it remains to check the dissipativity. To avoid certain technical problems we restrict ourselves to $p \in [2, \infty)$, see Example 2.29 for the case $p \in (1, 2)$. Let $u \in D(A)$. We set $w = |u|^{p-2} \overline{u}$ which belongs to $J(u)$ by Example 1.31. Note that $w(0) = 0 = w(1)$ by the boundary conditions. Remark 1.42 yields the embedding $W^{2,p}(0, 1) \hookrightarrow C^1([0, 1])$ so that $w$ is contained in $C^1([0, 1])$. Since $p \geq 2$, we can now compute
\[ w' = \frac{d}{ds} (|u|^{p-2} \overline{u}) = |u|^{p-4} |u|^2 \overline{u}' + \frac{p-2}{2} (|u|^2) \frac{p-2}{2} - 1 (u' \overline{u} + u \overline{u}') \overline{u} \]
\[ = |u|^{p-4} (|u|^2 \overline{u} + (p-2) \text{Re}(\overline{u} u')) \overline{u}. \]
Formula (1.21) and $w(0) = 0 = w(1)$ now imply
\[ \text{Re}(Au, w) = \text{Re} \int_0^1 u'' w \, ds = -\text{Re} \int_0^1 u' w' \, ds + u' w |^1_0 \]
\[ = -\int_0^1 |u|^{p-4} (|\overline{u} u'|^2 + (p-2)(\text{Re}(\overline{u} u'))^2) \, ds \]
\[ = -\int_0^1 |u|^{p-4} ((\text{Im}(\overline{u} u'))^2 + (p-1)(\text{Re}(\overline{u} u'))^2) \, ds \leq 0. \]

Theorem 1.40 now implies the assertion, and $R(\lambda)$ is the resolvent of $A$. \qed

We add an example where $A$ is dissipative but not a generator and $A^*$ is not dissipative, cf. Corollary 1.41. This can happen since we impose too many (four) boundary conditions instead of two (for two derivatives) as above.

**Example 1.50.** Let $E = L^2(0, 1)$, $Au = u''$, and
\[ D(A) = \{u \in W^{2,2}(0, 1) \mid u(0) = u'(0) = u(1) = u'(1) = 0\} = W^{2,2}_0(0, 1). \]
(The last space is the closure of $C^\infty_0(0, 1)$ in $W^{2,2}(0, 1)$; the final equality follows from Remark 1.42.) Then $A$ is closed, densely defined, dissipative, and symmetric, but not a generator and not selfadjoint, and $A^*$ is not dissipative.

**Proof.** The density of $D(A)$ follows again from Proposition 4.13 in [FA]. To check closedness, take maps $u_n \in D(A)$ such that $u_n \to u$ and $u_n'' \to v$ in $E$ as $n \to \infty$. Proposition 3.31 in [ST] then shows that also $(u_n')$ converges in $E$, cf. (1.28). From Remark 1.42 we now deduce that $u$ belongs to $W^{2,2}(0, 1)$.
and \( u_n \to u \) in \( W^{2,2}(0,1) \). The boundary conditions for \( u_n \) transfer to \( u \) via the limits of \((u_n)\) and \((u'_n)\) since \( W^{1,2}(0,1) \hookrightarrow C([0,1]) \) by Remark 1.42. Hence, \( u \) belongs to \( D(A) \) and \( A \) is closed.

Let \( u \in D(A) \) and \( v \in W^{2,2}(0,1) \). Using integration by parts (1.21) and the boundary conditions of \( u \), we compute

\[
(Au|v) = \int_0^1 u''\tau \, ds = -\int_0^1 u'\tau' \, ds + u'|_0^1 = \int_0^1 u\tau'' \, ds + u\tau'|_0^1 = (u|Av).
\]

Hence, \( A \) is symmetric (take \( v \in D(A) \)) and dissipative (take \( v = u \)). Moreover, the operator \( \partial^2 \) with domain \( W^{2,2}(0,1) \) is a restriction of \( A' \) and also of \( A^* \).

Let \( v \in D(A^*) \). As in Example 1.43 one can see that \( A'v \in E \) is the second weak derivative of \( v \in E \). Lemma 3.5 in [ST] yields smooth functions \( v_n \) such that \( v_n \to v \) and \( v''_n \to v'' \) in \( L^2(a,b) \) for all \( 0 < a < b < 1 \). Then \( v''_n \) tends in the same sense to a function \( g \in E \) by Proposition 3.31 in [ST]. From Lemma 3.5 in [ST] we deduce that \( g \) is the weak derivative of \( v \), and thus \( v \) belongs to \( W^{2,2}(0,1) \). It follows \( A^* = \partial^2 \) with \( D(A^*) = W^{2,2}(0,1) \neq D(A) \). Hence, \( A \) is not selfadjoint.

Since \( \partial^2 e^{is} = \lambda e^{is} \) for \( \mu = \sqrt{\lambda} \) and \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{R}_{\leq 0} \), the operator \( \lambda I - A^* \) is not injective. As a result, \( A^* \) is not dissipative in view of Proposition 1.39 and the spectrum of \( A \) contains \( \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{R}_{\leq 0} \) by Theorem 1.24 of [ST]. In particular, \( A \) is not a generator.

C) The Dirichlet–Laplacian and the wave equation. In many applications one looks at the Laplacian on a domain in \( \mathbb{R}^3 \). In an \( L^2 \) context we can show generation properties of this operator, though it is not possible to describe its domain precisely by our means. (This point is discussed below.) We restrict ourselves again to Dirichlet boundary conditions, others are treated in the exercises. The main tool is the Lax–Milgram lemma which is a core consequence of Riesz’ representation of Hilbert space duals.\(^3\)

**Theorem 1.51.** Let \( Y \) be a Hilbert space and \( a : Y^2 \to \mathbb{C} \) be sesquilinear map which is bounded and strictly accretive; i.e.,

\[
|a(x,y)| \leq c \|x\| \|y\| \quad \text{and} \quad \Re a(y,y) \geq \delta \|y\|^2
\]

for all \( x, y \in Y \) and some constants \( c, \delta > 0 \). Then for each functional \( \psi \in Y^* \) there is a unique vector \( z \in Y \) satisfying \( a(y,z) = \psi(y) \) for all \( y \in Y \). The map \( \psi \mapsto z \) is antilinear and bounded.

**Proof.** Let \( y \in Y \). The map \( \varphi_y := a(\cdot, y) \) belongs to \( Y^* \) with \( \|\varphi_y\| \leq c \|y\| \). Riesz’ Theorem 3.10 in [FA] yields a unique element \( Sy \) of \( Y \) satisfying \( \|Sy\| = \|\varphi_y\| \leq c \|y\| \) and \( \langle \cdot, Sy \rangle = \varphi_y \). Moreover, \( S : Y \to Y \) is linear. We next estimate

\[
\delta \|y\|^2 \leq \Re a(y,y) = \Re(y|Sy) = |(y|Sy)| \leq c \|y\| \|Sy\|,
\]

\[
\frac{\delta}{c} \|y\| \leq \|Sy\| \leq c \|y\|.
\]

\(^3\)The next proof was not given in the lectures.
for every \( y \in Y \). As a consequence, \( S \) is bounded, injective and has a closed range \( \operatorname{R}(S) \) by Corollary 4.31 in [FA]. For a vector \( y \perp \operatorname{R}(S) \) we also obtain

\[
0 = \langle y | SY \rangle = \operatorname{Re} \langle y | SY \rangle = \operatorname{Re} a(y, y) \geq \delta \|y\|^2
\]  

(1.30)

so that \( y = 0 \). It follows that \( \operatorname{R}(S) = \overline{\operatorname{R}(S)} = Y \) by Theorem 3.8 in [FA] and so \( S \) is invertible with \( \|S^{-1}\| \leq \frac{2}{\delta} \).

Let \( \psi \in Y^* \). There is a unique vector \( v \in Y \) such that \( \psi = (\cdot \mid v) \) thanks to Riesz’ theorem. The above construction implies the identity

\[
a(y, S^{-1}v) = \langle y | SS^{-1}v \rangle = \langle y | v \rangle = \psi(y)
\]  

(1.31)

for all \( y \in Y \). We set \( z = S^{-1}v = S^{-1}T \psi \), where \( T : Y^* \rightarrow Y \) denotes the antilinear isomorphism from Riesz’ theorem.

\[\square\]

We can now construct the Dirichlet–Laplacian \( \Delta_D \) and show its main properties. Here will need Poincaré’s inequality. For any bounded open nonempty set \( G \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m \) and any \( p \in [1, \infty) \), there is a constant \( c = c(G, p) > 0 \) such that

\[
\|u\|_p \leq c \|\nabla u\|_p
\]  

(1.32)

for all \( u \in W^{1,p}_0(G) \), see Corollary 3.22 in [ST]. We set \( W^{1,2}_0(G)^* =: W^{-1,2}(G) \).

Since \( W^{1,2}_0(G) \) is densely embedded into \( L^2(G) \) via the inclusion \( I \), Proposition 5.46 in [FA] shows that \( L^2(G) \) is densely embedded into \( W^{-1,2}(G) \) with the emdding \( I^* \). Here we identify as usual \( L^2(G) \) with \( L^2(G)^* \) by means of the Riesz’ isomorphism, but we do not identify \( W^{1,2}_0(G) \) with \( W^{-1,2}(G) \) (which would require a different Riesz’ isomorphism).

**Example 1.52.** Let \( G \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m \) be open and bounded with boundary \( \partial G \) of class \( C^1 \), \( E = L^2(G) \), and \( A_0 = \Delta \) with \( \operatorname{D}(A_0) = W^{2,2}(G) \cap W^{1,2}_0(G) \). Then \( A_0 \) is densely defined, symmetric, and dissipative. The operator \( A_0 \) has an extension \( \Delta_D \) which is selfadjoint, invertible and generates a \(-\delta\)-contraction semigroup, where \( \delta = 1/c(G, 2) > 0 \) is given by (1.32). Moreover, \([\operatorname{D}(\Delta_D)]\) is densely embedded in \( W^{1,2}_0(G) \).

The domain \( \operatorname{D}(\Delta_D) \) contains all maps \( u \in W^{1,2}_0(G) \) for which there is a function \( f =: \Delta_D u \in L^2(G) \) such that

\[
\forall v \in W^{1,2}_0(G) : \quad \langle v | \Delta_D u \rangle = (v | \Delta_D u)_{L^2} = -\int_G \nabla v \cdot \nabla u \, dx.
\]

The operator \( \Delta_D \) has a bounded invertible extension \( \Delta_D : W^{1,2}_0(G) \rightarrow W^{-1,2}(G) \) (the *weak Dirichlet–Laplacian*) which acts as

\[
\forall u, v \in W^{1,2}_0(G) : \quad \langle v, \Delta_D u \rangle_{W^{1,2}_0(G)} = -\int_G \nabla v \cdot \nabla u \, dx.
\]

**Proof.** The density of \( \operatorname{D}(A_0) \) in \( E \) again is a consequence of Proposition 4.13 in [FA]. Let \( u, v \in \operatorname{D}(A_0) \). Using formula (1.21) and \( v, u \in W^{1,2}_0(G) \), we deduce

\[
(A_0 u | v) = \int_G \operatorname{div}(\nabla u) \nabla v \, dx = -\int_G \nabla u \cdot \nabla v \, dx + \int_{\partial G} (\nu \cdot \nabla u) \nabla v \, d\sigma
\]

\[
= \int_G u \Delta v \, dx - \int_{\partial G} u (\nu \cdot \nabla v) \, d\sigma = (u | A_0 v).
\]


Estimate (1.32) similarly yields

\[(A_0 u | u) = - \int_G |\nabla u|^2 \, dx \leq -\delta \|u\|^2_2 \leq 0\]

for \(\delta = 1/c(G,2) > 0\). Hence, \(A_0\) and \(A_0+\delta I\) are symmetric and dissipative.

In order to construct the extension, we introduce the sesquilinear form

\[a(u, v) = \int_G \nabla u \cdot \nabla \bar{v} \, dx\]

for \(u, v \in W^{1,2}_0(G)\). The form \(a\) is bounded with the constant \(c = 1\) by Hölder’s inequality and strictly accretive by (1.32). Let \(f \in L^2(G)\). The map \(g \mapsto \int_G g \, d\bar{v} \) defines an element in \(L^2(G)^* \hookrightarrow W^{-1,2}(G)\). Theorem 1.51 now yields a unique function \(u_f\) in \(W^{1,2}_0(G)\) such that \((a(v, u_f) = \int_G v \, d\bar{v})\) for all \(v \in W^{1,2}_0(G)\). We introduce

\[D(\tilde{A}) = \{ u \in W^{1,2}_0(G) | \exists c > 0 \forall v \in W^{1,2}_0(G) : |a(v, u)| \leq c \|v\|_2 \}.\]

Note that the function \(u_f\) belongs to \(D(\tilde{A})\) with \(c = \|f\|_2\) and that \(D(\tilde{A})\) is the set of all \(u \in W^{1,2}_0(G)\) such that the map \(v \mapsto a(v, u)\) can be extended to an element of \(L^2(G)^*\). Take \(u \in D(\tilde{A})\). By Riesz’ Theorem 3.10 in [FA], there then exists a unique function \(g \in L^2(G)\) such that \((a(\cdot, u) = (\cdot | g)\) on \(W^{1,2}_0(G)\).

We then define \(A u = g\). Observe that \(A u = f\) and so \(\tilde{A}\) is surjective.

Let \(v \in W^{1,2}_0(G)\) and \(u \in D(A_0)\). Using (1.21) and \(\text{tr} v = 0\), we compute

\[a(v, u) = \int_G \nabla v \cdot \nabla \bar{u} \, dx = - \int_G v \Delta \bar{u} \, dx + \int_{\partial G} v (\nu \cdot \nabla \bar{u}) \, d\sigma = (v| - \Delta u);\]

i.e., \(\tilde{A}\) extends \(-A_0\). Let \(u, v \in D(\tilde{A})\). Our definitions imply

\[
\begin{align*}
(v|\tilde{A}u) &= a(v, u) = a(u, v) = (u|\tilde{A}v) = (\tilde{A}v|u), \\
(-\tilde{A}u|u) &= -(u|\tilde{A}u) = -a(u, u) \leq -\delta \|u\|^2_2 = -\delta (u|u),
\end{align*}
\]

so that \(\tilde{A}\) is symmetric and \(\delta I - \tilde{A}\) is dissipative. Moreover, \(\delta I - (\delta I - \tilde{A}) = \tilde{A}\) is surjective. Thanks to the Lumer-Phillips Theorem 1.40, the operator \(\delta I - \tilde{A}\) generates a contraction semigroup which means that \(-\tilde{A}\) generates a \(-\delta\)-contraction semigroup by Lemma 1.18. In particular, \(\tilde{A}\) is invertible, and hence selfadjoint due to Theorem 4.7 in [ST]. We set \(\Delta_D = -\tilde{A}\).

To show the other claims, we take \(u \in D(\Delta_D)\). Our construction first yields

\[
\|u\|_{1,2}^2 = \|u\|^2_2 + a(u, u) = \|u\|^2_2 - (u|\Delta_D u) \leq \|u\|^2_2 + \frac{1}{2} \|u\|^2_2 + \frac{1}{2} \|\Delta_D u\|^2_2
\]

so that \([D(\Delta_D)] \hookrightarrow W^{1,2}_0(G)\). Since \(C_c^\infty(G) \subseteq D(A_0) \subseteq D(\Delta_D)\), the set \(D(\Delta_D)\) is dense in \(W^{1,2}_0(G)\). We further compute

\[
\begin{align*}
\|\Delta_D u\|_{W^{-1,2}(G)} &= \sup_{v \in W^{1,2}_0(G), \|v\|_{1,2} \leq 1} \|(v|\Delta_D u)\| = \sup_{v \in W^{1,2}_0(G), \|v\|_{1,2} \leq 1} \|a(v, u)\| \\
&\leq \sup_{v \in W^{1,2}_0(G), \|v\|_{1,2} \leq 1} \|v\|_{1,2} \|u\|_{1,2} = \|u\|_{1,2}.
\end{align*}
\]
We can thus extend $\Delta_D$ to a bounded map $\Delta_D : W^{1,2}_0(G) \to W^{-1,2}_0(G)$ given as in the statement, using the density of $D(\Delta_D)$. Its range is dense because it contains $L^2(G)$. Employing also (1.32), we finally infer
\[ \|\Delta_D u\|_{W^{-1,2}(G)} \|u\|_{1,2} \geq |\langle u, \Delta_D u \rangle_{W^{1,2}(G)}| = |a(u, u)| \geq \frac{\delta}{\delta + 1} \|u\|_{1,2}^2 \]
for $u \in W^{1,2}_0(G)$. This means that $\Delta_D$ is injective and has closed range in $W^{-1,2}(G)$ by Remark 2.11 in [FA]; i.e., it is invertible.

So far we only know that $A_0 \subseteq \Delta_D$; i.e., $\Delta_D u = \Delta u$ for $u \in W^{2,2}(G) \cap W^{1,2}_0(G) \subseteq D(\Delta_D)$. The equality $A_0 = \Delta_D$ is not true in the above example, in general. If $\partial G \in C^2$, however, Theorem 6.2.4 of [Ev] implies that $A_0$ is surjective, and hence $A_0 = \Delta_D$ in this case by Lemma 1.24. We clearly have $\|u\|_2 + \|\Delta u\|_2 \leq c \|u\|_2$ for $u \in D(A_0)$. Since $A_0$ is closed in this case, the space $[D(A_0)]$ is complete. The graph norm of $A_0 = \Delta_D$ is thus equivalent to that of $W^{2,2}(G)$ by the open mapping theorem, see Corollary 4.29 in [FA].

The next operator will be used to solve the wave equation as explained in Example 2.4. Because of (1.32), we can endow $W^{1,2}_0(G)$ with the equivalent scalar product
\[ (u|v)_Y = \int_G \nabla u \cdot \nabla v \, dx \]  
(1.33)
for $u, v \in W^{1,2}_0(G)$. We write $Y$ for $W^{1,2}_0(G)$ with this scalar product.

**Example 1.53.** Let $G \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$ be open and bounded with boundary $\partial G$ of class $C^1$ and $\Delta_D$ be given on $L^2(G)$ by Example 1.52. Set $E = Y \times L^2(G)$, $D(A) = D(\Delta_D) \times Y$, and
\[ A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & I \\ \Delta_D & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \]
Then $A$ is skewadjoint, and thus generates a unitary $C_0$-group on $E$ due to Stone’s Theorem 1.45. Note that $D(A)$ and $D(\Delta_D) \times Y$ have equivalent norms.

**Proof.** Let $(u_1, v_1)$ and $(u_2, v_2)$ belong to $D(A)$. We compute
\[
(A(u_1|v_1)|v_2) = (\Delta_D u_1|v_2) = \int_G \nabla u_1 \cdot \nabla v_2 + \Delta_D u_1 v_2 \, dx
\]
\[ = -\int_G (v_1 \Delta_D v_2 + \nabla u_1 \cdot \nabla v_2) \, dx = -(u_1|v_2) E
\]
using the scalar product of $Y$ and the definition of $\Delta_D$. We thus arrive at
\[ (A(u_1|v_1)|v_2) E = (u_1|v_2) E - A(u_2|v_2) E.
\]
Hence, $-A \subseteq A'$ and so $iA \subseteq (iA)'$. We define
\[
R = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \Delta^{-1}_D \\ I & 0 \end{pmatrix} : E \to D(\Delta_D) \times Y = D(A),
\]
where $\Delta^{-1}_D$ exists thanks to Example 1.52. It is easy to see that $AR = I$ and $R AU = w$ for every $w \in D(A)$. Hence, $A$ is invertible so that $0 \in \rho(iA)$ and $iA$ is selfadjoint by Theorem 4.7 in [ST]; i.e., $A$ is skewadjoint. \(\square\)
CHAPTER 2

The evolution equation and regularity

In the first two sections we discuss the solvability properties of (also inhomogeneous) evolution equations. A class of more regular $C_0$-semigroups and the corresponding Cauchy problems will be investigated in the last section.

2.1. Wellposedness and the inhomogeneous problem

In this section we come back to the relationship between generation properties of $A$ and the solvability of the corresponding differential equation. In a second part we treat inhomogeneous problems in which one adds a given input function to the evolution equation.

Let $A$ be a closed operator on $X$ and $x \in D(A)$. We study the Cauchy problem or evolution equation

$$u'(t) = Au(t), \quad t \geq 0, \quad u(0) = x.$$ (2.1)

Recall from Definition 1.10 that a (classical) solution of (2.1) is a function $u \in C^1([\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, X)$ taking values in $D(A)$ and satisfying (2.1) for all $t \geq 0$. Observe that then $Au$ belongs to $C([\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, X)$ and thus $u$ to $C([\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, [D(A)])$.

Let the states $u(t) \in X$ describe a physical system whose properties are encoded in the operator $A$ and its domain. We then want to predict the future behaviour of the system by means of (2.1). To this aim, we need solutions for ‘many’ initial values $x$. Moreover, the solutions have to be uniquely determined by $x$ since otherwise we do not really predict the behavior. In addition, one will know the initial value only approximately, so that for a reasonable prediction the solutions should not vary too much under small changes of the data.\(^1\) In the next definition we make these requirements precise.

**Definition 2.1.** Let $A$ be closed. The Cauchy problem (2.1) is called well-posed if $D(A)$ is dense in $X$, if for each $x \in D(A)$ there is a unique solution $u = u(\cdot; x)$ of (2.1), and if the solutions depend continuously on the data; i.e.,

$$\forall b > 0 : \quad (D(A), \| \cdot \|_X) \to C([0, b], X); \quad x \mapsto u(\cdot; x), \quad \text{is continuous.} \quad (2.2)$$

The next theorem says that for closed $A$ the wellposedness of (2.1) and the generation property of $A$ are equivalent. This fact justifies the definitions made at the beginning of Chapter 1.

**Theorem 2.2.** Let $A$ be a closed operator. It generates a $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ if and only if (2.1) is wellposed. In this case, the function $u = T(\cdot)x$ solves (2.1) for each given $x \in D(A)$.

\(^1\)Actually, the same applies to the dependence on the operator $A$, but this will be discussed in Section 3.2.
2.1. Wellposedness and the inhomogeneous problem

PROOF. 1) If $A$ generates $T(\cdot)$, then $T(\cdot)x$ is the unique solution of (2.1) according to Proposition 1.11. The solution continuously depends on the initial data since $\|T(t)\|$ is bounded for $t \in [0, b]$ and any fixed $b > 0$ by Lemma 1.4.

2) Conversely, let (2.1) be wellposed. i) We define the operator $T(t)$ by $T(t)x = u(t; x) \in D(A)$ for $x \in D(A)$ and $t \geq 0$ using uniqueness. Clearly, $T(0) = I$ and $T(\cdot)x : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \to X$ is continuous. For $x, y \in D(A)$ and $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{C}$, the function $\alpha u(\cdot; x) + \beta u(\cdot; y)$ solves the problem (2.1) with initial value $\alpha x + \beta y$ since $A$ is linear. Hence, $T(t) : D(A) \to D(A)$ is linear for every $t \geq 0$. Let $t, s \geq 0$ and $x \in D(A)$. Then $u(s; x)$ belongs to $D(A)$ so that $v(t) := T(t)u(s; x) = T(t)T(s)x$ for $t \geq 0$ is the unique solution of (2.1) with initial value $u(s; x)$. On the other hand, $u(t + s; x) = T(t + s)x$ for $t \geq 0$ also solves this problem. Uniqueness then shows that $T(t)T(s)x = T(t + s)x$.

ii) For each $b > 0$ there is a constant $c(b) > 0$ such that $\|T(t)x\| \leq c(b) \|x\|$ for all $x \in D(A)$ and $t \in [0, b]$. In fact, if this assertion was wrong, there would exist a time $b > 0$, a sequence $(x_n)$ in $D(A)$, and times $t_n \in [0, b]$ such that $\|x_n\| = 1$ and $0 < \|T(t_n)x_n\| =: c_n \to \infty$ as $n \to \infty$. Set $y_n = \frac{1}{c_n}x_n \in D(A)$ for every $n \in \mathbb{N}$. The initial values $y_n$ tend to $0$ as $n \to \infty$, but the norms $\|u(t_n; y_n)\| = \frac{1}{c_n}\|T(t_n)x_n\| = 1$ do not converge to $0$. This contradicts assumption (2.2), and thus $T(\cdot)$ is locally uniformly bounded.

Lemma 2.13 of [FA] now allows us to extend each single map $T(t)$ to a bounded linear operator on $\overline{D(A)} = X$ (also denoted by $T(t)$) having the same operator norm. Lemma 4.10 in [FA] yields the strong continuity of the family $(T(t))_{t \geq 0}$. By approximation, the semigroup law extends from $D(A)$ to $X$ so that $T(\cdot)$ is a $C_0$-semigroup.

iii) Let $B$ be the generator of $T(\cdot)$. We have $A \subseteq B$ since $T(\cdot)$ solves (2.1). Because $D(A)$ is dense in $X$ and $T(t)D(A) \subseteq D(A)$ for all $t \geq 0$, Proposition 1.38 shows that $D(A)$ is dense in $[D(B)]$. So for each $x \in D(B)$ there are vectors $x_n$ in $D(A)$ such that $x_n \to x$ and $Ax_n = Bx_n \to Bx$ in $X$ as $n \to \infty$. The closedness of $A$ now implies that $x \in D(A)$ and $A = B$. \hfill \Box

We discuss variants of the above result.

REMARK 2.3. a) One cannot drop condition (2.2) in Theorem 2.2: Let $B$ be a closed, densely defined, unbounded operator in a Banach space $Y$. Set $X = Y \times Y$ and $A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & B \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ with $D(A) = Y \times D(B)$. Observe that $A$ is closed and $D(A)$ is dense in $X$. For $(x, y) \in D(A)$ one has the unique solution $u(t) = (x + tBy, y)$ of (2.1) with $u(0) = (x, y)$. But for $t > 0$ one cannot continuously extend $T(t) : (x, y) \mapsto u(t)$ to a map on $X$ since $T(t)(0, y) = (tBy, y)$.

b) By Proposition II.6.6 in [EN], problem (2.1) has a unique solution for a closed operator $A$ and each $x \in D(A)$ if and only if the operator $A_1$ on $X_1 = [D(A)]$ given by $A_1 x = Ax$ with $D(A_1) = \{ x \in X_1 \mid Ax \in X_1 \}$ generates a $C_0$-semigroup on $X_1$. Moreover, if $\rho(A) \neq 0$ and (2.1) has a unique solution for each $x \in D(A)$, then $A$ is a generator on $X$, see Theorem II.6.7 in [EN]. \hfill \Diamond

We now use Example 1.53 to solve the wave equation. For simplicity, we restrict ourselves to the time interval $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ though one could treat $\mathbb{R}$, thus solving the problem backward in time starting from $t = 0$. 

\hfill \Diamond
Example 2.4. Let $G \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$ be open and bounded with boundary $\partial G$ of class $C^1$. We study the wave equation
\begin{align*}
\partial_t u(t, x) &= \Delta u(t, x), \quad t \geq 0, \ x \in G, \\
u(t, x) &= 0, \quad t \geq 0, \ x \in \partial G,
\end{align*}
with Dirichlet boundary conditions and given functions $(u_0, u_1)$. Let $\Delta_D$ on $L^2(G)$ be given by Example 1.52. We take $u_0 \in D(\Delta_D)$ and $u_1 \in Y = W_0^{1,2}(G)$, where $Y$ is endowed with the scalar product from (1.33).

We interpret the partial differential equation (2.3) as the second order evolution equation
\begin{equation}
\tag{2.4}
u''(t) = \Delta_D u(t), \quad t \geq 0, \quad u(0) = u_0, \quad u'(0) = u_1,
\end{equation}
in $L^2(G)$. Here we look for solutions $u \in C^2(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, L^2(G)) \cap C^1(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, Y) \cap C(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, [D(\Delta_D)])$. In particular, the boundary condition in (2.3) is understood in the sense of trace $u(t) \in W_0^{1,2}(G)$ and the Laplacian in the form sense of Example 1.52. To obtain a first order evolution equation, we set $E = Y \times L^2(G)$, $D(A) = D(\Delta_D) \times Y$, and
\begin{equation*}
A = \begin{pmatrix}
0 & I \\
\Delta_D & 0
\end{pmatrix}.
\end{equation*}

From Example 1.53 we know that $A$ generates a unitary $C_0$-group $T(\cdot)$ on $E$.

We claim that (2.4) has a solution $u$ if and only if the problem (2.1) on $E$ for the above $A$ and $w_0 = (u_0, u_1) \in D(A)$ has a solution $w = (w_1, w_2)$, which is then given by $w = (u, u')$.

To show the claim, let $w$ solve (2.1) for $A$. The function $u := w_1$ then belongs to $C^1(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, Y) \cap C(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, [D(\Delta_D)])$ with $u(0) = u_0$ and $w_2$ to $C^1(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, L^2(G)) \cap C(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, Y)$. Equation (2.1) for $A$ also yields that $u' = w_1' = w_2$ so that $u$ is an element of $C^2(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, L^2(G))$ with $u'(0) = u_1$ and it satisfies $u'' = w_2' = \Delta_D w_1 = \Delta_D u$ as required. Conversely, let $u$ solve (2.4). We then set $w = (u, u')$. This map is contained in $C(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, [D(A)]) \cap C^1(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, E)$, fulfills $w(0) = w_0$ and
\begin{equation*}
w' = \begin{pmatrix}
u' \\
u''
\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}u' \\
u''\end{pmatrix} = Au.
\end{equation*}

For each $(u_0, u_1) \in D(\Delta_D) \times Y$ we thus have a unique solution $u$ of (2.4).

Inhomogeneous evolution equations. To the problem (1.1) we now add a given function $f : J \to X$ on a time interval $J$ with $\inf J = 0$. In view of applications to nonlinear problems, cf. [Lu] or [NE], we allow here for general $J$. In our linear problem, $f$ can model a force in a wave equation or a source-sink term in a diffusion problem. We require that $f \in C(J, X)$ satisfies
\begin{equation}
\int_0^\delta \|f(s)\| \, ds < \infty \quad \text{for some } \delta \in J \setminus \{0\}.
\end{equation}

Observe that in this case $f$ satisfies (2.5) for all $\delta \in J \setminus \{0\}$ and that (2.5) is true if $0 \in J$ by continuity. Let $A$ generate the $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ and $u_0 \in X$. We study the inhomogeneous evolution equation
\begin{equation}
\tag{2.6}
u'(t) = Au(t) + f(t), \quad t \in J, \quad u(0) = u_0.
\end{equation}
Our first solution concept is similar to the homogeneous case in Definition 1.10, where we set $J' = J \cup \{0\}$ and require continuity of $u$ at $t = 0$ in view of the initial condition.

**Definition 2.5.** A map $u : J' \to X$ is a (classical) solution of \((2.6)\) on $J$ if $u$ belongs to $C^1(J,X) \cap C(J',X)$, $u(t) \in D(A)$ for $t \in J$, and $u$ satisfies \((2.6)\).

Again a solution is contained in $C(J,[D(A)])$. We first show uniqueness of such solutions and that they are given by Duhamel’s formula \((2.7)\). If $0 \notin J$, in \((2.7)\) one uses an $X$-valued improper Riemann integral which is defined as in Analysis 1 and which exists if the norm of the integrand is integrable.

**Proposition 2.6.** Let $A$ generate the $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$, $u_0 \in X$, and $f \in C(J,X)$ satisfy \((2.5)\). If $u$ solves \((2.6)\) on $J$, then $u$ is given by
\[
 u(t) = T(t)u_0 + \int_0^t T(t-s)f(s) \, ds, \quad t \in J'.
\]

In particular, solutions of \((2.6)\) are unique.

**Proof.** Let $t \in J \setminus \{0\}$ and set $v(s) = T(t-s)u(s)$ for $0 \leq s \leq t$, where $u$ solves \((2.6)\) on $J$. As in the proof of Proposition 1.11 and using \((2.6)\), one shows that $v$ is continuously differentiable with derivative
\[
 v'(s) = T(t-s)u'(s) - T(t-s)Au(s) = T(t-s)f(s)
\]
for all $0 < s \leq t$. Let $\varepsilon \in (0,t)$. By integration we deduce
\[
 \int_\varepsilon^t T(t-s)f(s) \, ds = v(t) - v(\varepsilon) = u(t) - T(t-\varepsilon)u(\varepsilon).
\]

Lemma 1.4 yields the bound $\|T(t-s)f(s)\| \leq Me^{\omega_1 t}\|f(s)\|$ whose right hand side is integrable by \((2.5)\). So we can let $\varepsilon \to 0$ in the above integral. Lemma 1.13 and \((2.6)\) further imply that $T(t-\varepsilon)u(\varepsilon) \to T(t)u_0$. $\square$

Note that Duhamel’s formula \((2.7)\) defines a function $u$ for all $x \in X$ and $f \in C(J,X)$ with \((2.5)\). One can thus ask whether $u$ still solves the equation \((2.6)\) for such data. In the present setting, this is not true in general as the next example shows, but we continue to discuss this point in the following section.

**Example 2.7.** Let $X = C_0(\mathbb{R})$, $A = \frac{d}{dx}$ with $D(A) = C^1_0(\mathbb{R})$, and $\varphi \in X \setminus C^1(\mathbb{R})$. The operator $A$ generates the $C_0$-group $T(\cdot)$ on $X$ given by $T(t)g = g(\cdot + t)$, see Example 1.22. The function $T(t)\varphi$ then does not belong to $D(A)$ for each $t \geq 0$ and at some $t_0 \in \mathbb{R}$ the map $t \mapsto (T(t)\varphi)(0) = \varphi(t)$ is not differentiable. Define $f \in C(\mathbb{R},X)$ by $f(t) = T(t)\varphi$ and let $u_0 = 0$. Formula \((2.7)\) then yields
\[
 u(t) = \int_0^t T(t-r)T(r)\varphi \, dr = tT(t)\varphi, \quad t \geq 0.
\]

So $u$ does not solve \((2.6)\) as $u(t) \notin D(A)$ and $u$ is not differentiable for $t > 0$. $\diamond$

We now show criteria on $f$ implying that Duhamel’s formula \((2.7)\) provides a solution of \((2.6)\). We start with the core step that says that time and ‘space’ regularity are equivalent. As in Proposition 1.11, for instance, we heavily rely on the Definition 1.1 of generators.
Let $A$ generate the $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$, $u_0 \in D(A)$, and $f \in C(J, X)$ satisfy (2.5). Define $v(t) = \int_0^t T(t-s)f(s)\,ds$ for $t \in J$ and $v(0) = 0$ if $0 \notin J$. Then the following assertions are equivalent.

a) $v \in C^1(J, X)$.

b) $v(t) \in D(A)$ for all $t \in J$ and $Av \in C(J, X)$.

In this case, (2.7) gives the unique solution of (2.6) on $J$. If (2.6) has a solution on $J$, then properties a) and b) are true.

**Proof.** 1) By Proposition 1.11, the orbit $T(\cdot)u_0$ belongs to $C^1([\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, X]) \cap C([\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, D(A)])$ with derivative $\frac{d}{dt}T(t)u_0 = AT(t)u_0$ for all $t \in J$, since $u_0 \in D(A)$. Let $v$ solve (2.6). We then deduce $v = u - T(\cdot)x$ from Proposition 2.6, so that $v$ satisfies properties a) and b). Proposition 2.6 yields uniqueness.

2) Let a) or b) be valid. It remains to show that $v$ solves (2.6) with $u_0 = 0$, since then $v$ defined by (2.7) is a solution of (2.6) for the given initial value $u_0$. We first note that $\|v(t)\| \leq Me^{\omega t} \int_0^t \|f(s)\|\,ds$ tends to 0 as $t \to 0$ since $s \to \|f(s)\|$ is integrable near 0 by (2.5). It is then easy to check that $v : J' \to X$ is continuous, for instance using dominated convergence.

We next fix $t \in J$ and take $h \neq 0$ such that $t + h \in J$. We compute

\[
D_1(h) := \frac{1}{h}(T(h) - I)v(t) = \frac{1}{h}(v(t+h) - v(t)) - \frac{1}{h} \int_0^{t+h} T(t+h-s)f(s)\,ds
\]

=: $D_2(h) - I(h)$.

Since $f \in C(J, X)$, it follows

\[
\|I(h) - f(t)\| = \left\| \frac{1}{h} \int_0^{t+h} \left( T(t+h-s)f(s) - f(t) \right) \,ds \right\|
\leq \max_{|s-t| \leq |h|} \|T(t+h-s)f(s) - f(t)\| \to 0
\]
as $h \to 0$, thanks to Lemma 1.13. As a result, $D_1(h)$ converges if and only if $D_2(h)$ converges as $h \to 0$. The convergence of $D_1$ means that $v(t) \in D(A)$ and $D_1(h) \to Av(t)$ as $h \to 0$, and that of $D_2$ is equivalent to the differentiability of $v$ at $t$ with $D_2(h) \to v'(t)$ as $h \to 0$. We further obtain that $Av(t) = v'(t) - f(t)$; i.e., $v$ satisfies the differential equation in (2.6) for this $t$. For each $t \in J$ the properties a) and b) imply the convergence of $D_2$ and $D_1$, respectively, and hence the function $v$ solves (2.6) with $u_0 = 0$.

The next theorem is the fundamental existence result for the inhomogeneous evolution equation (2.6). For simplicity, we restrict ourselves to closed $J$.

**Theorem 2.9.** Let $A$ generate the $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$, $u_0 \in D(A)$, and $J$ be closed. Assume either that $f \in C^1(J, X)$ or that $f \in C(J, [D(A)])$. Then the function $u$ given by (2.7) is the unique solution of (2.6) on $J$.

**Proof.** Since $J$ is closed, $f$ satisfies condition (2.5) and so uniqueness follows from Proposition 2.6. Let $f \in C^1(J, X)$. Writing $v(t) = \int_0^t T(s)f(t-s)\,ds$ for $t \in J$, we see that $v$ has the continuous derivative

\[
v'(t) = T(t)f(0) + \int_0^t T(s)f'(t-s)\,ds
\]
as in Analysis 2 or Remark 1.16 f). Hence, property a) in Lemma 2.8 is satisfied.

Let $f \in C(J, [D(A)])$. Proposition 1.11 and Lemma 1.13 imply that the vector $T(t-s)f(s)$ belongs to $D(A)$ and the map $(t, s) \mapsto AT(t-s)f(s) = T(t-s)Af(s)$ is continuous in $X$ for $s \leq t$ in $J$. Remark 1.16d) now yields that $v(t)$ belongs to $D(A)$ and $Av(t) = \int_0^t T(t-s)Af(s) \, ds$. As in Analysis 2 one then checks that $Av$ is an element of $C(J, X)$, and so statement b) of Lemma 2.8 is fulfilled. The theorem is now follows from Lemma 2.8.

\[ \square \]

Variants for more regular solutions are discussed in the exercises. We apply the above result to the wave equation with a given force.\footnote{The function $g$ in (2.8) corresponds to a force if the mass density of the vibrating object is equal to 1.}

**Example 2.10.** In the setting of Example 2.4, we consider the inhomogeneous wave equation

\[
\begin{align*}
\partial_t u(t, x) &= \Delta u(t, x) + g(t, x), \quad t \geq 0, \ x \in G, \\
u(t, x) &= 0, \quad t \geq 0, \ x \in \partial G, \\
u(0, x) &= u_0(x), \quad \partial_t u(0, x) = u_1(x), \quad x \in G,
\end{align*}
\tag{2.8}
\]

for given $u_0 \in D(\Delta_D)$, $u_1 \in Y = W^{1,2}_0(G)$ and $g \in C(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, L^2(G))$, where we set $g(t, x) = (g(t))(x)$ for all $t \geq 0$ and almost every $x \in G$. As in Example 2.4 we write these equations as

\[
u''(t) = \Delta_D u(t) + g(t), \quad t \geq 0, \quad \nu(0) = u_0, \quad \nu'(0) = u_1, \tag{2.9}
\]

and look for solutions $u \in C^2(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, L^2(G)) \cap C^1(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, Y) \cap C(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, [D(\Delta_D)])$. Again the second order problem is equivalent to the first order problem

\[
w'(t) = A(t)w(t) + f(t), \quad t \geq 0, \quad \w_0 = (u_0, u_1),
\]

on $E = Y \times L^2(G)$ with $w = (u, u')$

\[
A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & I \\ \Delta_D & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{on } D(A) = D(\Delta_D) \times Y, \quad \text{and } \quad f = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ g \end{pmatrix}.
\]

In view of Theorem 2.9 and Example 1.53, we obtain a unique solution $u$ of (2.9) if either $g$ belongs to $C^1(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, L^2(G))$ and so $f$ to $C^1(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, E)$, or $g$ is contained in $C(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, Y)$ and so $f$ in $C(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, [D(A)])$.\footnote{This is a placeholder for a footnote.}

\subsection{2.2. Mild solution and extrapolation}

So far we have considered solutions of (2.1) or (2.6) taking values in $D(A)$, which is surely a natural choice. However, in many situations one wants to admit solutions and initial values in $X$. For instance, in the wave equation from Examples 2.4 and 2.10 the squared norm of the state space $E$ is (up to factors) equal to the physical energy, and it is often desirable only to require that the solutions have finite energy. We first introduce a concept that is motivated by Proposition 2.6 and which plays an important role for certain nonlinear evolution equations. Let $J$ be an interval with inf $J = 0$ and $J' = J \cup \{0\}$.\footnote{This is another placeholder for a footnote.}
**Definition 2.11.** Let $A$ generate the $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$, $u_0 \in X$, and $f \in C(J, X)$ satisfy (2.5). The function $u \in C(J', X)$ given by

$$u(t) = T(t)u_0 + \int_0^t T(t-s)f(s) \, ds, \quad t \in J',$$

is called mild solution (on $J'$) of (2.6).

The continuity of the mild solution and $u(0) = u_0$ were shown in the proof of Lemma 2.8. The above definition has the obvious drawback that one does not directly see the connection to $A$ and to (2.6). For $f = 0$, Lemma 1.19 suggests the following notion which involves $A$ explicitly.

**Definition 2.12.** Let $A$ be a closed operator, $u_0 \in X$, $0 \in J$, and $f \in C(J, X)$. A function $u \in C(J, X)$ is called an integrated solution (on $J$) of (2.6) if the integral $\int_0^t u(s) \, ds$ belongs to $D(A)$ and satisfies

$$u(t) = u_0 + A\int_0^t u(s) \, ds + \int_0^t f(s) \, ds \quad (2.10)$$

for all $t \in J$.

The questions arise whether integrated solutions are unique, how they relate to mild ones, and whether they solve a differential equation. At least, the function $t \mapsto \int_0^t u(s) \, ds$ is differentiable though in $X$ instead of $[D(A)]$. Moreover, for mild solutions it is not clear at all how to differentiate $t \mapsto T(t-s)f(s)$. The key idea to solve these problems is to enlarge the state space $X$ suitably.

**Definition 2.13.** Let $A$ be a closed operator with $\mu \in \rho(A)$. We define the extrapolated norm $\|x\|_{-1} = \|R(\mu, A)x\|$ for $x \in X$ and the extrapolation space $X_{-1} = X^A_{-1}$ as the completion of $(X, \| \cdot \|_{-1})$.

Here is $\| \cdot \|_{-1}$ a coarser norm on $X$ than the original one (which is not complete if $A$ is unbounded). We recall from Section 2.2D of [FA] that for a normed vector space $Y$ there exists the completion $\tilde{Y}$. It is a Banach space such that there is an isometry $J : Y \to \tilde{Y}$ with dense range which is unique up to isometric isomorphisms. We thus identify $X$ with a dense subspace of $X_{-1}$.

The norm $\| \cdot \|_{-1}$ does not depend on the choice of $\mu \in \rho(A)$ (up to equivalence): Let $\lambda \in \rho(A) \setminus \{\mu\}$. Using the resolvent equation (1.7), we compute

$$\|R(\lambda, A)x\| \leq \|R(\mu, A)x\| + |\mu - \lambda| \|R(\lambda, A)R(\mu, A)x\| \leq (1 + |\mu - \lambda| \|R(\lambda, A)\|) \|R(\mu, A)x\|, \quad (2.11)$$

and one can interchange $\lambda$ and $\mu$ here.

By means of Lemma 2.13 in [FA] and density, one can extend an operator $S \in B(X)$ to $X^A_{-1}$ if (and only if) it satisfies $\|R(\mu, A)Sx\|_X \leq c \|R(\mu, A)x\|_X$ for some $c > 0$ and all $x \in X$.

In Example 2.17 we compute $X_{-1}$ in one case. But actually one can quite often use $X_{-1}$ to ‘legalize illegal computations’ without knowing a precise description of it. The next result shows that we can extend the $C_0$-semigroup generated by $A$ to $X^A_{-1}$ keeping many of its properties.
Proposition 2.14. Let $A$ generate the $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ on $X$. For $t \geq 0$, the operators $T(t)$ have a bounded extension $T_{-1}(t)$ to $X_{-1} = X_{A_{-1}}$, which form a $C_0$-semigroup on $X_{-1}$. It is generated by the extension $A_{-1} \in \mathcal{B}(X, X_{-1})$ of $A$, where $D(A_{-1}) = X$, and $\| \cdot \|_X$ is equivalent to the graph norm of $A_{-1}$. Moreover, for all $\lambda \in \rho(A)$ the resolvent $R(\lambda, A)$ has an extension in $\mathcal{B}(X_{-1}, X)$ which is the resolvent of $A_{-1}$. The maps $R := R(\mu, A_{-1}) : X_{-1} \to X$ and $R^{-1} = \mu I - A_{-1}$ are isometric isomorphisms satisfying $A = RA_{-1}R^{-1}$ on $D(A)$, and thus $\sigma(A) = \sigma(A_{-1})$. Analogous facts are true for $R(\mu, A)$ and $T(t)$.

Proof. 1) Let $\lambda \in \rho(A)$ and $x \in X$. By estimate (2.11) we have
\[ \| R(\lambda, A)x \| \leq c_{\lambda} \| x \|_X \] for a constant $c_{\lambda}$. Because $X$ is dense in $X_{-1}$, we can extend $R(\lambda, A)$ to a map $R_\lambda$ in $\mathcal{B}(X_{-1}, X)$ using Lemma 2.13 in [FA]. We note that $R_\mu$ is an isometry. For $x \in D(A)$ we have
\[ \| Ax \|_{A_{-1}} = \|(A - \mu I + \mu I)R(\mu, A)x \|_X \leq (1 + |\mu| \| R(\mu, A) \|) \| x \| \]
so that $A$ has an extension $A_{-1} \in \mathcal{B}(X, X_{-1})$. The identity $I_X = (\lambda I_X - A)R(\lambda, A)$ on $X$ can thus be extended to $I_{X_{-1}} = (\lambda I_X - A_{-1})R_\lambda$ on $X_{-1}$, and analogously one obtains $I_X = R_\lambda(\lambda I_X - A_{-1})$ on $X$. This means that $\lambda \in \rho(A_{-1})$ and $R_\lambda = R(\lambda, A_{-1})$. (Note that $A_{-1}$ is closed in $X_{-1}$ as $R_\lambda \in \mathcal{B}(X_{-1}, X)$.) We next compute
\[ R(\mu, A_{-1})A_{-1}(\mu I - A)x = A_{-1}R(\mu, A)(\mu I - A)x = Ax \]
for $x \in D(A)$, obtaining that $A$ and $A_{-1}$ are similar. It follows that $\sigma(A) = \sigma(A_{-1})$ since $R(\lambda I_{-1} - A) = \lambda I - A$ on $D(A)$. Using $X \subseteq X_{-1}$, we show the asserted norm equivalence by
\[ \| x \|_{A_{-1}} = \| x \|_{X_{-1}} + \| A_{-1}x \|_{X_{-1}} \leq c \| x \|_X + \| A_{-1}x \|_X, \]

\[ \| x \|_X = \| RR^{-1}x \|_X = \| \mu x - A_{-1}x \|_{X_{-1}} \leq \max\{ |\mu|, 1 \} \| x \|_{A_{-1}}. \]

2) It is easy to see that $A_{-1} = R^{-1}AR$ with $D(A_{-1}) = X$ generates the $C_0$-semigroup on $X_{-1}$ given by $T_{-1}(t) := R^{-1}T(t)R$ for $t \geq 0$, cf. Paragraph II.2.1 in [EN]. This semigroup extends $T(\cdot)$ since we have
\[ T_{-1}(t)x = (\mu I - A)T(t)R(\mu, A)x = T(t)x \]
for $x \in X$. The other assertions are shown similarly.

Part 1) of the proof also works if one only assumes that $A$ is closed with $\mu \in \rho(A)$. Using these concepts and results, we can now easily show that mild and integrated solutions coincide and that they are just the unique (classical) solutions in $X_{-1}$ of the extrapolated problem
\[ u'(t) = A_{-1}u(t) + f(t), \quad t \in J, \quad u(0) = u_0 \in X. \] (2.12)

Proposition 2.15. Let $A$ generate the $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ on $X$, $u_0 \in X$, $0 \in J$, and $f \in C(J, X)$. Then the mild solution $u \in C(J, X)$ given by (2.7) also belongs to $C^1(J, X_{-1})$ and $u$ is the (classical) solution of (2.12) in $X_{-1}$. It is also the unique integrated solution of (2.6) in the sense of (2.10).

Proof. The first assertion follows from Theorem 2.9 and Proposition 2.14 employing that $X = D(A_{-1})$ and $T_{-1}(t)|_X = T(t)$.
Let \( u \in C(J, X) \) be the (unique) solution of (2.12). Integrating this differential equation, we derive the identity
\[
    u(t) - u_0 = \int_0^t A_{-1} u(s) \, ds + \int_0^t f(s) \, ds
\]
for \( t \in J \). We can take \( A_{-1} \in \mathcal{B}(X, X_{-1}) \) out of the integral, resulting in
\[
    (A_{-1} - \mu I) \int_0^t u(s) \, ds = u(t) - u_0 - \mu \int_0^t u(s) \, ds \quad - \int_0^t f(s) \, ds.
\]
Since the right hand side belongs to \( X \) and \( R(\mu, A_{-1}) \) extends \( R(\mu, A) \), the integral \( \int_0^t u(s) \, ds \) thus belongs to \( D(A) \) and \( u \) is an integrated solution of (2.1).

Let \( u \in C(J, X) \) be an integrated solution of (2.12). As \( A_{-1} \in \mathcal{B}(X, X_{-1}) \), we can differentiate \( t \mapsto A \int_0^t u(s) \, ds \) in \( X_{-1} \) with derivative \( A_{-1} u(t) \). Equation (2.10) then implies that \( u \) is contained in \( C^1(J, X_{-1}) \) and solves (2.12).

For any Banach space \( X \) we have the isometry
\[
    J_X : X \to X^{**}; \quad J_X(x) = \langle x, \cdot \rangle_{X \times X^*},
\]
see Proposition 5.24 of [FA]. The space \( X \) is called reflexive if \( J_X \) is surjective. By Example 5.27 in [FA], a Hilbert space \( X \) is reflexive with \( J_X = \Phi_X \cdot \Phi_X \) for the Riesz isomorphisms. In the reflexive case one can describe the extrapolation by duality in a convenient way. We write \( X_{-1}^\ast \) instead of \( (X_{-1})^\ast \).

**Proposition 2.16.** Let \( A \) be closed with \( \mu \in \rho(A) \) and dense domain. Then there is an isomorphism \( \Psi : [D(A^\ast)] \to X_{-1}^\ast \) satisfying \( \langle \Psi x^\ast \rangle(x) = \langle x, x^\ast \rangle_{X \times X^*} \) for \( x \in X \hookrightarrow X_{-1} \) and \( x^\ast \in D(A^\ast) \). Let also \( X \) be reflexive. We then have an isomorphism \( \tilde{\Phi} : X_{-1} \to [D(A^\ast)]^\ast \) extending \( J_X : X \to X^{**} \).

**Proof.** Replacing \( A - \mu I \) by \( A \) we can restrict ourselves to the case \( \mu = 0 \). Let \( x^\ast \in D(A^\ast) \). For \( x_{-1} \in X_{-1} \) we set
\[
    \langle \Psi x^\ast \rangle(x_{-1}) = \langle A_{-1}^\ast x_{-1}, A^\ast x^\ast \rangle_{X \times X^*}.
\]
We first observe that
\[
    \|\langle \Psi x^\ast \rangle(x_{-1})\|_{X \times X^*} \leq \|A_{-1}^\ast x_{-1}\|_X \|A^\ast x^\ast\|_{X^*} \leq \|x_{-1}\|_{X_{-1}} \|x^\ast\|_{A^\ast},
\]
so that \( \Psi x^\ast \) belongs to \( X_{-1}^\ast \) with norm less or equal \( \|x^\ast\|_{A^\ast} \) and hence \( \Psi : [D(A^\ast)] \to X_{-1}^\ast \) is a linear contraction. Since \( A_{-1}^\ast \) extends \( A^{-1} \) on \( X \), this map acts as \( \langle \Psi x^\ast \rangle(x) = \langle x, x^\ast \rangle_{X \times X^*} \) for \( x \in X \).

To show surjectivity, we take \( \varphi \in X_{-1}^\ast \). Let \( x \in X \). We then estimate
\[
    |\varphi(A_{-1} x)| \leq \|\varphi\|_{X_{-1}^\ast} \|A_{-1} x\|_{X_{-1}} \leq \|\varphi\|_{X_{-1}^\ast} \|x\|_X,
\]
and hence \( \varphi \circ A_{-1} \) is contained in \( X^\ast \). There thus exists an element \( y^\ast \) of \( X^\ast \) such that \( \varphi(A_{-1} x) = \langle x, y^\ast \rangle_X \) for all \( x \in X \) and \( \|y^\ast\|_{X^\ast} \leq \|\varphi\|_{X_{-1}^\ast} \). We set \( x^\ast = (A^\ast)^{-1} y^\ast \in D(A^\ast) \) recalling that \( \sigma(A^\ast) = \sigma(A) \) by Theorem 1.24 of [ST]. It follows \( A^\ast x^\ast = y^\ast \) and
\[
    \|x^\ast\|_{A^\ast} = \|\langle (A^\ast)^{-1} A^\ast x^\ast \rangle_{X \times X^*} \|_{X^\ast} = c \|y^\ast\|_{X^\ast} \leq c \|\varphi\|_{X_{-1}^\ast}.
\]

---

This proof was omitted in the lectures.
Moreover, the definitions of $\Psi$ and $y^*$ yield
\[(\Psi x^*)(x_{-1}) = (A_{-1}^{-1}x_{-1}, A^*_x x) = \varphi(A_{-1}A_{-1}^{-1}x_{-1}) = \varphi(x_{-1})\]
for all $x_{-1} \in X_{-1}$; i.e., $\varphi = \Psi x^*$. We have shown the surjectivity of $\Psi$. It is also injective with a bounded inverse by the above lower estimate, and thus $\Psi$ is invertible.

Let $X$ be reflexive so that also the isomorphic space $X_{-1}$ is reflexive, see Corollary 5.51 in [FA]. We then define the isomorphism $\Phi = \Psi^*J_{X_{-1}} : X_{-1} \rightarrow [D(A^*)]^*$. For $x \in X$ and $x^* \in D(A^*)$ we compute
\[\langle x^*, \Phi x \rangle_{D(A^*)} = \langle \Psi x^*, J_{X_{-1}} x \rangle_{X_{-1}} = \langle x, \Psi x^* \rangle_X = \langle x^*, J_x x \rangle_{X^*},\]
using the above properties. This shows the last assertion.

By extrapolation we now obtain solutions $u$ of the wave equation (2.9) such that $(u(t), u'(t))$ only take values in the space $W_0^{1,2}(G) \times L^2(G)$ of finite energy.

**Example 2.17.** As in Examples 2.4 and 2.10 we study the wave equation (2.9), now with data $w_0 = (w_0, u_0) \in W_0^{1,2}(G) \times L^2(G)$ and $g \in C(J, L^2(G))$. We look for solutions $u$ in $Z := C(J, W_0^{1,2}(G)) \cap C^1(J, L^2(G)) \cap C^2(J, W^{-1,2}(G))$ using the weak Dirichlet–Laplacian $\tilde{\Delta}_D : W_0^{1,2}(G) \rightarrow W^{-1,2}(G)$ from Example 1.52, where we include a tilde for a moment.

Again we look at the first order formulation of (2.9) on $E = W_0^{1,2}(G) \times L^2(G)$ with $w = (u, u')$,
\[A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & I \\ \Delta_D & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{on} \quad D(A) = D(\Delta_D) \times W_0^{1,2}(G), \quad \text{and} \quad f = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ g \end{pmatrix}.\]

Example 1.53 provides the inverse
\[A^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \Delta_D^{-1} \\ I & 0 \end{pmatrix} : E \rightarrow D(A).\]

From Example 1.52 we obtain the invertible extension $\tilde{\Delta}_D : W_0^{1,2}(G) \rightarrow W^{-1,2}(G)$ of $\Delta_D$. To see that $\tilde{\Delta}_D^{-1}$ extends $\Delta_D^{-1}$, take $\varphi \in L^2(G) \hookrightarrow W^{-1,2}(G)$. The maps $\tilde{\varphi} = \tilde{\Delta}_D^{-1} \varphi \in W_0^{1,2}(G)$ and $\varphi = \Delta_D^{-1} \varphi \in D(\Delta_D)$ both satisfy $\tilde{\Delta}_D \tilde{\varphi} = \varphi$ and $\Delta_D v = \Delta_D u = \varphi$, so that $\tilde{\varphi} = v$ as $\tilde{\Delta}_D$ is injective.

Set $F = L^2(G) \times W^{-1,2}(G)$. For $(u, v) \in E$ we conclude that
\[\|(u, v)\|_{E_{-1}} = \|A^{-1}(u, v)\|_E = \|\tilde{\Delta}_D^{-1} v, u\|_E \cong \|(u, v)\|_F .\]

Composing the isometry $J : (E, \|\cdot\|_{E_{-1}}) \rightarrow E_{-1}$ from Proposition 2.21 of [FA] with the identity, we obtain an isomorphism $J_0 : (E, \|\cdot\|_E) \rightarrow (JE, \|\cdot\|_{E_{-1}})$. By density it can be extended to an isomorphism $J_F : F \rightarrow E_{-1}$. We now identify $F$ and $E_{-1}$ omitting $J_F$. The extension of $A$ to $E$ is then given by
\[A_{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & I \\ \Delta_D & 0 \end{pmatrix} : E \rightarrow L^2(G) \times W^{-1,2}(G).\]

It generates a $C_0$-semigroup on $E_{-1} = L^2(G) \times W^{-1,2}(G)$ by Proposition 2.14. Theorem 2.9 thus yields a unique solution $w$ of (2.12) in $E_{-1}$ for our data. As in Examples 2.4 and 2.10, one now obtains a unique solution $u \in Z$ of (2.9) given by $w = (u, u')$.  

\[\Box\]
2.3. Analytic semigroups and sectorial operators

So far we have treated $C_0$-semigroups and groups without requiring further properties of them. However, both from the viewpoint of applications and from a more theoretical perspective, it is natural and rewarding to study classes of $C_0$-semigroups with specific properties. (In [EN] such questions are treated in detail.) For instance, compact semigroup or resolvent operators often occur in concrete problems, and they have special properties, of course. If the Banach space $X$ carries an order structure (e.g., $X = L^p(\mu)$ or $X = C_0(G)$), then ‘positive’ semigroups preserving the order are important, and they are used to describe diffusion or transport phenomena. Compactness does not play a role below, but occasionally we will come back to positivity later in the course.

Another possible property of $C_0$-semigroups $T(\cdot)$ is the improved regularity of the map $\mathbb{R}^+ \ni t \mapsto T(t)$ beyond strong continuity.\footnote{Recall from the exercises that the generator $A$ is bounded if $T(t) \to I$ in $\mathcal{B}(X)$ as $t \to 0$.} In this section we study the strongest case in this context, namely analyticity of the map $\mathbb{R}^+ \to \mathcal{B}(X); \ t \mapsto T(t)$. This class turns out to be of great importance in applications to diffusion problems, for instance. We first introduce and discuss a class of operators which is crucial to determine the generators of such ‘analytic semigroups.’

Let $\phi \in (0, \pi]$. We write $\Sigma_\phi = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\} \mid |\arg \lambda| < \phi \}$ for the open sector with (half) opening angle $\phi$. Observe that $\Sigma_{\pi/2} = \mathbb{C}^+$ is the open right halfplane and $\Sigma_\pi = \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{R}_{\leq 0}$ is the plane with cut $\mathbb{R}_{\leq 0}$.

**Definition 2.18.** A closed operator $A$ is called sectorial of type $(K, \phi)$ if for some constants $\phi \in (0, \pi]$ and $K > 0$ the sector $\Sigma_\phi$ belongs to $\rho(A)$ and the resolvent satisfies the inequality

$$\|R(\lambda, A)\| \leq \frac{K}{|\lambda|} \quad \text{for all } \lambda \in \Sigma_\phi. \quad (2.13)$$

The supremum $\varphi(A) = \varphi \in (0, \pi]$ of all such $\phi$ is called the angle of $A$.

Often we will look at maps $A$ such that the shifted operator $A - \omega I$ is sectorial for some $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$, which can be treated by rescaling arguments. Clearly, if $A$ is sectorial with angle $\varphi$, then it has type $(K_\varphi, \varphi)$ for all $\phi \in (0, \varphi)$. Typically, $K_\varphi$ explodes as $\phi \to \varphi$ as we will see below in several examples. One can check that $\sigma(A) \subseteq \{0\}$ if $(2.13)$ is true for $\phi = \pi$, using Theorem 1.13(d) of [ST].

We also note that several variants of the above concepts are used in literature; in particular many authors consider operators whose resolvent set contains a sector opening to the left.

We first discuss several relatively simple examples which are typical nevertheless, starting with the arguably ‘nicest’ class of operators.

**Example 2.19.** Let $X$ be a Hilbert space and $A$ be closed, densely defined, and selfadjoint on $X$ satisfying $\sigma(A) \subseteq \mathbb{R}_{\leq 0}$. Then $A$ is sectorial of angle $\pi$.

**Proof.** Let $\phi \in (\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi)$ and $\lambda \in \Sigma_\phi \subseteq \rho(A)$. Since $R(\lambda, A)' = R(\lambda, A)$ by (4.2) in [ST], the operator $R(\lambda, A)$ is normal. Propositions 4.3 and 1.20 of [ST]
2.3. Analytic semigroups and sectorial operators

and the assumption then yield

\[ \|R(\lambda, A)\| = r(R(\lambda, A)) = \frac{1}{d(\lambda, \sigma(A))} \leq \frac{1}{\min \{|\lambda|, \Re \lambda \geq 0, \}\, |\lambda|, \Re \lambda < 0}. \]

If \( \Re \lambda < 0 \), we can write \( \lambda = |\lambda| e^{i\theta} \) for some \( \theta \in (\frac{\pi}{2}, \phi) \). Elementary properties of sine thus imply \( \frac{\Im \lambda}{|\lambda|} = \sin \theta \geq \sin \phi > 0 \), and hence

\[ \|R(\lambda, A)\| \leq \frac{1}{\max \sigma} =: \frac{K_\phi}{|\lambda|} \quad \text{for all} \quad \lambda \in \Sigma_\phi. \quad \square \]

**Example 2.20.** Let \( X = C([0, 1]) \), \( A = \frac{d^2}{dx^2} \), and \( D(A) = \{ u \in C^2([0, 1]) \mid u(0) = u(1) = 0 \} \). The closure of \( D(A) \) is \( X_0 = C_0(0, 1) \). We set \( A_0 u = u'' \) for \( u \in D(A_0) = \{ u \in D(A) \mid u'' \in X_0 \} \). The operators \( A \) and \( A_0 \) are sectorial of angle \( \pi \).

**Proof.** The closure of \( D(A) \) can be determined as in Example 1.48. We only treat \( A \), as \( A_0 \) is handled similarly. Let \( f \in X \) and \( \lambda \in \Sigma_\phi \) so that \( \lambda = \mu^2 \) for some \( \mu \in \mathbb{C}_+ \). Formula (1.29) in Example 1.48 implies that \( \lambda \in \rho(A) \) and

\[ R(\lambda, A) f(s) = a(f, \mu)e^{\mu s} + b(f, \mu)e^{-\mu s} + \frac{1}{2\mu} \int_0^1 e^{-\mu|s-\tau|} f(\tau) \, d\tau \]

for \( s \in [0, 1] \) and the coefficients

\[ \begin{pmatrix} a(f, \mu) \\ b(f, \mu) \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{2\mu(e^{\mu} - e^{-\mu})} \begin{pmatrix} e^{-\mu} \int_0^1 (e^{\mu \tau} - e^{-\mu \tau}) f(\tau) \, d\tau \\ e^{\mu} \int_0^1 (e^{\mu \tau} - e^{-\mu \tau}) f(\tau) \, d\tau \end{pmatrix}. \]

Fix \( \phi \in (\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi) \). Take \( \lambda = \mu^2 \in \Sigma_\phi \) and hence \( \mu \in \Sigma_{\phi/2} \). Let \( \theta = \arg \mu \). It follows \( 0 \leq |\theta| < \frac{\phi}{2} \) and \( \Re \mu = |\mu| \cos \theta \geq |\mu| \cos \frac{\phi}{2} \). So we can estimate

\[ \|R(\lambda, A) f\| \leq |a(f, \mu)| e^{\Re \mu} + |b(f, \mu)| + \|f\|_\infty \sup_{s \in [0, 1]} \int_s^{s-1} e^{-\Re \mu |\tau|} \, d\tau \]

\[ \leq \frac{\|f\|_\infty}{2|\mu|} \left| e^{\mu} - e^{-\mu} \right| \left( \int_0^1 (e^{\Re \mu \tau} + e^{-\Re \mu \tau}) \, d\tau + \int_0^1 (e^{\Re \mu e^{-\Re \mu \tau}} + e^{-\Re \mu e^{\Re \mu \tau}}) \, d\tau \right) + \frac{\|f\|_\infty}{|\mu| \Re \mu} \]

\[ = \frac{\|f\|_\infty}{2|\mu| \Re \mu} \left| e^{\mu} - e^{-\mu} \right| \left( (e^{\Re \mu} - 1 + 1 - e^{-\Re \mu}) + e^{\Re \mu} (1 - e^{-\Re \mu}) \right) + \frac{\|f\|_\infty}{|\mu| \Re \mu} \]

\[ \leq \frac{1}{\cos(\theta/2)} \left| \frac{\|f\|_\infty}{\mu^2} \left( \frac{(e^{\Re \mu} - e^{-\Re \mu}) + (e^{\Re \mu} - e^{-\Re \mu})}{2(e^{\Re \mu} - e^{-\Re \mu})} \right) + 1 \right) \]

\[ = \frac{\cos(\theta/2)}{|\lambda|} \|f\|_\infty. \quad \square \]
EXAMPLE 2.21. Let $X = C_0^1(\mathbb{R})$ and $Au = u'$ for $D(A) = C_0^1(\mathbb{R})$. Then $A$ is sectorial of angle $\frac{\pi}{2}$. (The analogous result for $X = L^p(\mathbb{R})$ is shown in Example 5.10 of [ST].)

Proof. By Example 1.22, we have $\sigma(A) = \text{i}\mathbb{R}$ and $\|R(\lambda, A)\| = 1 / \text{Re} \lambda$ for $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}_+$. Take $\phi \in (0, \pi/2)$. Let $\lambda \in \Sigma_{\phi}$. We obtain $\text{Re} \lambda \geq |\lambda| \cos \phi$ and hence

$$\|R(\lambda, A)\| \leq \frac{1}{|\cos \phi|},$$

which shows sectoriality of angle greater or equal $\pi/2$. Since $i\mathbb{R} \subseteq \sigma(A)$ the angle cannot be greater than $\pi/2$. $\square$

To study analytic semigroups we need a bit of complex analysis in Banach spaces. (See also Section 5.1 of [ST].)

Let $Y$ be a Banach space, $J \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ be a closed interval, and $\gamma : J \to Y$ be piecewise $C^1$. If $J = [a, b]$ and $\gamma(a) = \gamma(b)$, the curve $\gamma$ is called closed. We set $\Gamma = \gamma(J)$. For $f \in C(J, Y)$ we introduce the complex contour integral

$$\int_{\gamma} f \, dz = \int_{J} f(\gamma(s))\gamma'(s) \, ds.$$

If $J$ is not compact, above it is assumed that the right-hand side exists as an improper Riemann integral in $Y$. As in the proof of Proposition 1.21, one sees that this improper integral exists if the function $\|f \circ \gamma\| |\gamma'|$ is integrable on $J$.

Let $U \subseteq \mathbb{C}$ be open and starshaped, $f : U \to Y$ be complex differentiable, $\Gamma \subseteq U$ be closed, and $z \in U \setminus \Gamma$. We then have Cauchy’s theorem

$$\int_{\gamma} f(w) \, dw = 0,$$  \hspace{1cm} (2.14)

and Cauchy’s formula

$$n(\gamma, z)f(z) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\gamma} \frac{f(w)}{w-z} \, dw,$$

where

$$n(\gamma, z) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\gamma} \frac{dw}{w-z}. \hspace{1cm} (2.15)$$

In fact, by Theorems 2.6 and 2.8 and formula (3.3) in [A4] these equations are true with $f$ replaced by $\langle f, x^* \rangle$ for each $x^* \in X^*$. We hence obtain $\langle \int_{\Gamma} f \, dz, x^* \rangle = 0$ for every $x^* \in X^*$, implying (2.14) due to the Hahn-Banach theorem. Formula (2.15) is shown similarly. If $Y = \mathbb{C}$, identity (2.15) yields

$$e^{za} = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\partial B(a,1)} e^{\lambda z}(\lambda - a)^{-1} \, d\lambda \hspace{1cm} \text{for } a \in \mathbb{C} \text{ and } z \in \mathbb{C}.$$  

We want to imitate this formula for sectorial $A$. To this aim, we need a curve $\Gamma$ encircling the (typically unbounded) spectrum of $A$ counter clockwise. This curve has to be contained in $\Sigma_{\phi}$ for some $\phi < \varphi(A)$ in order to use the resolvent estimate (2.13), so that it has to be unbounded. In view of the occuring exponential function, the real part of $\lambda \in \Gamma$ has to tend to $-\infty$ to guarantee the convergence of the integral. We thus assume that $A$ is sectorial with angle $\varphi$ larger than $\pi/2$. For given numbers $R > r > 0$ and $\theta \in (\pi/2, \varphi)$ we define the paths

$$\Gamma_1 = \Gamma_1(r, \theta) = \{ \lambda = \gamma_1(s) = -se^{-i\theta} \mid s \in (-\infty, -r] \},$$
\[ \Gamma_2 = \Gamma_2(r, \theta) = \{ \lambda = \gamma_2(s) = re^{i\alpha} | \alpha \in [-\theta, \theta] \}, \]
\[ \Gamma_3 = \Gamma_3(r, \theta) = \{ \lambda = \gamma_3(s) = se^{i\theta} | s \in [r, \infty) \}, \]
\[ \Gamma = \Gamma(r, \theta) = \Gamma_1 \cup \Gamma_2 \cup \Gamma_3, \quad \Gamma_R = \Gamma \cap \overline{B}(0, R). \quad (2.16) \]

We write \( \int_\Gamma \) instead of \( \int_\gamma \) since the maps \( \gamma_j \) are injective. We first show that the relevant integral exists in \( \mathcal{B}(X) \).

**Lemma 2.22.** Let \( A \) be sectorial of type \((K, \phi)\) with \( \phi > \frac{\pi}{2} \), \( t > 0 \), \( \theta_0 \in (\frac{\pi}{2}, \phi) \), \( \theta \in [\theta_0, \phi) \), \( r > 0 \), and \( \Gamma = \Gamma(r, \theta) \) be defined by (2.16). Then the integral
\[ e^{t\Lambda} = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma} e^{\lambda} R(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda = \lim_{R \to \infty} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma_R} e^{\lambda} R(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda \quad (2.17) \]
converges absolutely in \( \mathcal{B}(X) \). The resulting operator \( e^{t\Lambda} \in \mathcal{B}(X) \) does not depend on the choice of \( r > 0 \) and \( \theta \in (\frac{\pi}{2}, \phi) \). Moreover, \( \|e^{t\Lambda}\| \leq M \) for all \( t > 0 \) and a constant \( M = M(K, \theta_0) > 0 \).

**Proof.** Since \( \|R(\lambda, A)\| \leq \frac{K}{|\lambda|} \) on \( \Gamma \) by (2.13), we can estimate
\[
\left\| \int_{\Gamma_R} e^{\lambda} R(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda \right\| \leq K \int_{\Gamma} \frac{\exp(ts \Re e^{-i\theta})}{|e^{-i\theta}|} |e^{-i\theta}| \, ds \\
+ K \int_{\Gamma} \frac{\exp(tr \Re e^{i\alpha})}{|e^{i\alpha}|} |i re^{i\alpha}| \, d\alpha \\
+ K \int_{\Gamma} \frac{\exp(ts \Re e^{i\theta})}{|e^{i\theta}|} |e^{i\theta}| \, ds \\
\leq 2K \int_{r}^{\infty} \frac{e^{ts \cos \theta}}{s} \, ds + K \int_{-\theta}^{\theta} e^{tr \cos \alpha} \, d\alpha \\
\leq K \left( 2 \int_{r t |\cos \theta|}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\sigma}}{\sigma} \left( -\frac{d\sigma}{-t \cos \theta} + 2\theta e^{t \gamma} \right) \right) \\
\leq K \left( 2 \int_{r t |\cos \theta_0|}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\sigma}}{\sigma} \, d\sigma + 2\pi e^{t \gamma} \right) =: K \gamma(t, r, \theta_0),
\]
for all \( R > r \) and \( t > 0 \), where we substituted \( \sigma = -st \cos \theta \) and used that \( \cos \theta \leq \cos \theta_0 < 0 \). The limit in (2.17) thus exists absolutely in \( \mathcal{B}(X) \) by the majorant criterion, and \( \|e^{t\Lambda}\| \leq K \gamma(t, r, \theta_0) \). If we take \( r = 1/t \), then \( \gamma(1/t, r, \theta_0) =: c(\theta_0) \) does not depend on \( t > 0 \).

So it remains to check that the integral in (2.17) is independent of \( r > 0 \) and \( \theta \in (\frac{\pi}{2}, \phi) \). To this aim, we define \( \Gamma' = \Gamma(r', \theta') \) for some \( r' > 0 \) and \( \theta' \in (\frac{\pi}{2}, \phi) \), where we may assume that \( \theta' \geq \theta \). We further set \( \Gamma'_R = \Gamma' \cap \overline{B}(0, R) \) and choose \( R > \max\{r, r'\} \). Let \( C^+_{\Gamma} \) and \( C^-_{\Gamma} \) be the circle arcs from the endpoints of \( \Gamma_{\Gamma} \) to that of \( \Gamma_{\Gamma} \) in \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} | \Im \lambda > 0 \} \) and \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} | \Im \lambda < 0 \}, respectively. (If \( \theta = \theta' \), then \( C^+_{\Gamma} \) contain just one point.) Then \( S_R = \Gamma_R \cup C^+_{\Gamma} \cup (-\Gamma'_{\Gamma}) \cup (-C^-_{\Gamma}) \) is a closed curve in the starshaped domain \( \Sigma_\phi \). So (2.14) shows that
\[ \int_{S_R} e^{\lambda} R(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda = 0. \]
We further estimate
\[ \left\| \int_{C_R} e^{tA} R(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda \right\| \leq \int_0^{\theta'} e^{tR} Re^{i\alpha} \frac{K}{|Re^{i\alpha}|} |iRe^{i\alpha}| \, d\alpha \leq K(\theta' - \theta)e^{tR \cos \theta} \to 0, \]
as \( R \to \infty \) since \( \cos \alpha \leq \cos \theta < 0 \), and analogously for \( C_R^{-} \). So we conclude
\[ \int_{\Gamma} e^{tA} R(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda = \lim_{R \to \infty} \int_{\Gamma_R} e^{tA} R(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda = \lim_{R \to \infty} \int_{\Gamma_R} e^{tA} R(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda \]
\[ = \int_{\Gamma} e^{tA} R(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda. \]
\[ \square \]

We next establish some of the fundamental properties of the operators \( e^{tA} \).

**Theorem 2.23.** Let \( A \) be sectorial of angle \( \varphi > \frac{\pi}{2} \). Define \( e^{tA} \) as in (2.17) for \( t > 0 \), and set \( e^{0A} = I \). Then the following assertions hold.

a) \( e^{tA} e^{sA} = e^{(t+s)A} \) for all \( t, s \geq 0 \).

b) The map \( t \mapsto e^{tA} \) belongs to \( C^1(\mathbb{R}^+, \mathcal{B}(X)) \). Moreover, \( e^{tA} X \subseteq D(A) \), \( \frac{d}{dt} e^{tA} = Ae^{tA} \) and \( \| Ae^{tA} \| \leq C/t \) for a constant \( C > 0 \) and all \( t > 0 \). We also have \( Ae^{tA} x = e^{tA} Ax \) for all \( x \in D(A) \) and \( t \geq 0 \).

c) Let \( x \in X \). Then \( e^{tA} x \) converges as \( t \to 0 \) in \( X \) if and only if \( x \) is contained in \( \overline{D(A)} \). In this case, \( e^{tA} x \) tends to \( x \) as \( t \to 0 \).

d) Let \( D(A) \) be dense. Then \( (e^{tA})_{t \geq 0} \) is a \( C_0 \)-semigroup generated by \( A \).

**Proof.** a) We proceed as in the holomorphic functional calculus in Theorem 5.1 of [ST]. Let \( t, s > 0 \). We use that \( e^{tA} \) does not depend on the choice of \( r \) and \( \theta \) by Lemma 2.22. Take \( 0 < r < r' \) and \( \frac{\pi}{4} < \theta' < \varphi < \varphi \). Set \( \Gamma = \Gamma(r, \theta) \) and \( \Gamma' = \Gamma(r', \theta') \) as in (2.16). Using the resolvent equation (1.7) and Fubini’s theorem, we compute
\[ e^{tA} e^{sA} = \frac{1}{(2\pi i)^2} \int_{\Gamma} e^{t\lambda} \int_{\Gamma'} e^{s\mu} R(\lambda, A) R(\mu, A) \, d\mu \, d\lambda \]
\[ = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma} e^{t\lambda} R(\lambda, A) \int_{\Gamma'} \frac{e^{s\mu}}{\lambda - \mu} \, d\mu \, d\lambda \]
\[ + \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma'} e^{s\mu} R(\mu, A) \int_{\Gamma} \frac{e^{t\lambda}}{\mu - \lambda} \, d\lambda \, d\mu. \]
(One shows Fubini in this context by inserting the parametrizations and applying a functional \( y^* \in \mathcal{B}(X)^* \). The integrability in \( (\lambda, \mu) \) is checked as in Lemma 2.22 or below.)

Fix \( \lambda \in \Gamma \) and take \( R' > \max \{ r, r', |\lambda| \} \). We set \( C'_{R'} = \{ z = R'e^{i\alpha} \mid \alpha \in [\theta', 2\pi - \theta'] \} \) and \( S'_{R'} = \Gamma' \cap C'_{R'} \). Cauchy’s formula (2.15) yields
\[ \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{S'_{R'}} \frac{e^{s\mu}}{\mu - \lambda} \, d\mu = e^{s\lambda} \]
2.3. Analytic semigroups and sectorial operators

Since \( n(S'_{R'}, \lambda) = 1 \). As in Lemma 2.22, we further compute

\[
\int_{\Gamma'} \frac{e^{s\mu}}{\mu - \lambda} \, d\mu \longrightarrow \int_{\Gamma'} \frac{e^{s\mu}}{\mu - \lambda} \, d\mu \quad \text{and} \\
\left| \int_{C'_{R'}} \frac{e^{s\mu}}{\mu - \lambda} \, d\mu \right| \leq 2\pi R' \sup_{\mu \in C'_{R'}} \frac{e^{sR\mu}}{\left| \mu - \lambda \right|} \leq e^{sR' \cos \theta'} \frac{2\pi R'}{R' - \left| \lambda \right|} \longrightarrow 0
\]

as \( R' \to \infty \), using that \( \cos \alpha \leq \cos \theta' < 0 \). It follows

\[
e^{s\lambda} = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma'} \frac{e^{s\mu}}{\mu - \lambda} \, d\mu.
\]

Next, fix \( \mu \in \Gamma' \) and take \( R > r \). Set \( C_R = \{ z = Re^{i\alpha} | \alpha \in [\theta, 2\pi - \theta] \} \) and \( S_R = \Gamma_R \cup C_R \). We now have \( n(S_R, \mu) = 0 \) and derive as above

\[
\int_{\Gamma} \frac{e^{t\lambda}}{\lambda - \mu} \, d\lambda = 0.
\]

The above equalities imply that

\[
e^{tA}e^{sA} = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma} e^{t\lambda}e^{s\lambda} R(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda = e^{(t+s)A} = e^{(s+t)A} = e^{sA}e^{tA}.
\]

b) Let \( x \in X, \ t > 0, \) and \( R > r \). Since \( \lambda \mapsto R(\lambda, A) \) is continuous in \( B(X, [D(A)]) \), also the integral

\[
T_R(t) = \int_{\Gamma} e^{t\lambda} R(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda
\]

belongs to \( B(X, [D(A)]) \). Recall from (2.17) that \( T_R(t) \) tends to \( 2\pi ie^{tA} \) in \( B(X) \) as \( R \to \infty \). We further compute

\[
AT_R(t) = \int_{\Gamma} e^{t\lambda}AR(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda = \int_{\Gamma} e^{t\lambda}AR(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda - \int_{\Gamma} e^{t\lambda} \, d\lambda I.
\]

Take again \( C_R = \{ \mu = Re^{i\alpha} | \alpha \in [\theta, 2\pi - \theta] \} \). Using Cauchy’s theorem (2.14), one shows as in step a) that

\[
\left| \int_{\Gamma} e^{t\lambda} \, d\lambda \right| = \left| - \int_{C_R} e^{t\lambda} \, d\lambda \right| \leq 2\pi R \sup_{\alpha \in [\theta, 2\pi - \theta]} e^{tR\cos \alpha} \leq 2\pi Re^{tR\cos \theta} \longrightarrow 0
\]

as \( R \to \infty \). As in the proof of Lemma 2.22 (with \( r = 1/t \) and \( \| R(\lambda, A) \| \leq K \) ), we then estimate

\[
\left| \int_{\Gamma} \| e^{t\lambda} R(\lambda, A) \| \, d\lambda \right| \leq 2K \int_{1}^{\infty} e^{ts\cos \theta} \, ds + K \int_{-\theta}^{\theta} e^{r\cos \alpha} \, d\alpha \\
\leq \frac{2K}{t |\cos \theta|} + \frac{2eK \theta}{t} =: \frac{C'}{t}.
\]

Hence, \( AT_R(t) \) converges to the integral

\[
\int_{\Gamma} e^{t\lambda} R(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda,
\]
in $\mathcal{B}(X)$ as $R \to \infty$. Since $A$ is closed, it follows that $e^{tA}X \subseteq \mathcal{D}(A)$,

$$Ae^{tA} = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma} \lambda e^{t\lambda}R(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda,$$

(2.18)

and $\|Ae^{tA}\| \leq \frac{C}{\pi t}$ for all $t > 0$.

Observe that $T_R(\cdot)$ belongs to $C^1(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, \mathcal{B}(X, [\mathcal{D}(A)]))$ with derivative

$$\frac{d}{dt}T_R(t) = \int_{\Gamma_R} \lambda e^{t\lambda}R(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda$$

for $t \geq 0$. Let $\varepsilon > 0$ and $t \geq \varepsilon$. In a similar way as above, one sees that

$$\left\| \int_{\Gamma \setminus \Gamma_R} \lambda e^{t\lambda}R(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda \right\| \leq 2K \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{ts\cos \theta} \, ds \leq \frac{2K}{\varepsilon |\cos \theta|} e^{R\cos \theta} \to 0$$

as $R \to \infty$ for $t \geq \varepsilon$. As a result,

$$\int_{\Gamma_R} \lambda e^{t\lambda}R(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda = \frac{d}{dt} \int_{\Gamma_R} e^{t\lambda}R(\lambda, A) \, d\lambda$$

converges in $\mathcal{B}(X)$ to $Ae^{tA}$ uniformly for $t \geq \varepsilon$, see (2.18). We infer that $t \mapsto e^{tA} \in \mathcal{B}(X)$ is continuously differentiable for $t > 0$ with $\frac{d}{dt}e^{tA} = Ae^{tA}$. For $x \in \mathcal{D}(A)$, we further obtain

$$Ae^{tA}x = \lim_{R \to \infty} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma_R} e^{t\lambda}R(\lambda, A)Ax \, d\lambda = e^{tA}Ax.$$

c) Let $x \in \mathcal{D}(A)$, $R > r$, and $t > 0$. As in part a), Cauchy’s formula (2.15) yields

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma} \frac{e^{t\lambda}}{\lambda} \, d\lambda = \lim_{R \to \infty} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma} \frac{e^{t\lambda}}{\lambda - 0} \, d\lambda = 1$$

Observing that $\lambda R(\lambda, A)x - x = R(\lambda, A)Ax$, we conclude

$$e^{tA}x - x = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma} e^{t\lambda} \left( R(\lambda, A) - \frac{1}{\lambda} \right)x \, d\lambda = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma} \frac{e^{t\lambda}}{\lambda} R(\lambda, A)Ax \, d\lambda.$$

Since the right integrand is bounded by $c|\lambda|^{-2}\|Ax\|$ on $\Gamma$ for all $t \in (0, 1]$, Lebesgue’s convergence theorem implies the existence of the limit

$$\lim_{t \to 0} e^{tA}x - x = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma} \frac{1}{\lambda} R(\lambda, A)Ax \, d\lambda =: z.$$

Let $K_R = \{ Re^{i\alpha} \mid -\theta \leq \alpha \leq \theta \}$. Cauchy’s theorem (2.14) shows that

$$\int_{\Gamma \cup (-K_R)} \frac{1}{\lambda} R(\lambda, A)Ax \, d\lambda = 0.$$

Since also

$$\left\| \int_{-K_R} \frac{1}{\lambda} R(\lambda, A)Ax \, d\lambda \right\| \leq \frac{2\pi RK}{R^2} \|Ax\| \to 0$$

as $R \to \infty$, we arrive at $z = 0$. Because of the uniform boundedness of $e^{tA}$, it follows that $e^{tA}x \to x$ as $t \to 0$ for all $x \in \mathcal{D}(A)$.

Conversely, if $e^{tA}x \to y$ as $t \to 0$, then $y \in \overline{\mathcal{D}(A)}$ by part b). Moreover, $R(1, A)e^{tA}x = e^{tA}R(1, A)x$ tends to $R(1, A)x$ as $t \to 0$, since $R(1, A)x \in \mathcal{D}(A)$. We thus obtain $R(1, A)y = R(1, A)x$, and so $x = y \in \overline{\mathcal{D}(A)}$. 
2.3. Analytic semigroups and sectorial operators

Let $D(A)$ be dense. The above results then imply that $(e^{tA})_{t \geq 0}$ is a $C_0$-semigroup. Let $B$ be its generator. To check that $A = B$, take $x \in D(A)$. For $t > s > 0$, part b) yields that

$$e^{tA}x - e^{sA}x = \int_s^t e^{\tau A}Ax \, d\tau.$$ 

Since the semigroup is strongly continuous, we can let $s \to 0$ resulting in

$$\lim_{t \to 0} \frac{1}{t} (e^{tA}x - x) = \int_0^t e^{\tau A}Ax \, d\tau.$$ 

The right-hand side tends to $sAx$ as $t \to 0$ by strong continuity; i.e., $A \subseteq B$. As the spectra of $A$ and $B$ are contained in $\mathbb{C}_-$, Lemma 1.24 yields $A = B$. \qed

We next establish a converse to the above theorem and study further regularity properties of $e^{tA}$, assuming that $D(A)$ is dense for simplicity. There are variants of the following results without the density of the domain, see Section 2.1 of [Lu]. We first introduce a basic concept.

**Definition 2.24.** Let $\vartheta \in (0, \pi/2]$. An analytic $C_0$-semigroup on $\Sigma_{\vartheta}$ is a family of operators $\{T(z) \, | \, z \in \Sigma_{\vartheta} \cap \{0\}\}$ such that

(a) $T(0) = I$ and $T(w)T(z) = T(w + z)$ for all $z, w \in \Sigma_{\vartheta}$;

(b) the map $T : \Sigma_{\vartheta} \to \mathcal{B}(X)$, $z \mapsto T(z)$, is (complex) differentiable;

(c) $T(z)x \to x$ in $X$ as $z \to 0$ in $\Sigma_{\vartheta'}$ for all $x \in X$ and each $\vartheta' \in (0, \vartheta)$.

The generator of $T(\cdot)$ is defined as the generator of the $C_0$-semigroup $(T(t))_{t \geq 0}$, and its angle $\psi \in (0, \pi/2]$ is the supremum of possible $\vartheta$.

If $\|T(z)\|$ is bounded for all $z \in \Sigma_{\vartheta'}$ and each $\vartheta' \in (0, \psi)$, the analytic $C_0$-semigroup is called bounded.

We now establish the fundamental characterization theorem of bounded analytic $C_0$-semigroups which goes back to Hille in 1948. Basically it says that a densely defined operator $A$ generates such a semigroup if and only if $A$ is sectorial of angle greater than $\pi/2$. Moreover, it gives two useful characterizations of sectoriality and describes the class of bounded analytic $C_0$-semigroups in a different, very convenient way. For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ with $n \geq 2$ we inductively define the powers of linear operator

$$D(A^n) = \{x \in D(A^{n-1}) \mid A^{n-1}x \in D(A)\} \quad \text{and} \quad A^n x = A(A^{n-1}x).$$

**Theorem 2.25.** Let $A$ be a closed linear operator on $X$. Then the following assertions are equivalent.

a) $A$ is densely defined and sectorial of angle $\varphi > \pi/2$.

b) $A$ is densely defined, $\mathbb{C}_+ \subseteq \rho(A)$, and there is a constant $C > 0$ such that $\|R(\lambda, A)\| \leq C/|\lambda|$ for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}_+$.

c) For some $\vartheta \in (0, \pi/2)$, the maps $e^{\pm i\vartheta}A$ generate bounded $C_0$-semigroups.

d) $A$ generates a bounded $C_0$-semigroup $(T(t))_{t \geq 0}$ such that $T(t)X \subseteq D(A)$ and $\|AT(t)\| \leq M_1/t$ for all $t > 0$ and a constant $M_1 > 0$.

e) $A$ generates a bounded analytic $C_0$-semigroup with angle $\psi \in (0, \pi/2]$. 

If this is the case, \( T(t) \) is given by (2.17) and we have \( T(t)X \subseteq D(A^n) \),
\[
\| A^n T(t) \| \leq M_n t^{-n}, \; T(\cdot) \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}_+, \mathcal{B}(X)), \text{ and } \frac{d^n}{dt^n} T(t) = A^n T(t) \text{ for all } t > 0, \; n \in \mathbb{N}, \text{ and some constants } M_n > 0.
\]

**Proof.** We prove the chain of implications \( e) \Rightarrow c) \Rightarrow b) \Rightarrow a) \Rightarrow d) \Rightarrow e) \) going from analyticity to sectoriality and back via claim \( d) \) using Theorem 2.23.

1) Let statement \( e) \) be true. Take \( \vartheta \in (0, \psi) \). The operators \( T(e^{ \pm i \vartheta} t) \) for \( t \geq 0 \) then yield two bounded \( C_0 \)-semigroups. As in Lemma 1.18 one sees that they are generated by \( e^{\pm i \vartheta} A \), and so \( c) \) has been established.

2) We assume property \( c) \) and that the semigroups generated by \( e^{\pm i \vartheta} A \) are bounded by \( M \). Proposition 1.20 shows the density of \( D(A) \). Because of Proposition 1.20 in [ST] and Proposition 1.21, condition \( c) \) first yields that \( \rho( A ) = e^{\pm i \vartheta} \rho(e^{\pm i \vartheta} A) \supseteq e^{\pm i \vartheta} C_+ \) and hence \( \rho( A ) \supseteq \Sigma_{\frac{\vartheta}{2}, +} \supseteq C_+ \). To check the resolvent estimate in \( b) \), we write \( e^{i \vartheta} = a + i b \) for \( a, b > 0 \) and take \( r > 0 \) and \( s > 0 \). We set \( c = \min \{ a, b \} > 0 \). Employing again Proposition 1.20 in [ST], assumption \( c) \) and Proposition 1.21, we estimate
\[
\| R(r + is, A) \| = \| e^{-i \vartheta} R(e^{-i \vartheta}(r + is), e^{-i \vartheta} A) \| \leq \frac{M}{\text{Re}((a - i b)(r + is))}
\]
\[
= \frac{M}{ar + bs} \leq \frac{M/c}{r + s} \leq \frac{M/c}{|\lambda|}.
\]
The case \( s < 0 \) can similarly be treated using \( e^{i \vartheta} A \). Hence, \( b) \) is valid.

3) Let statement \( b) \) be true. If a point is with \( s \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{ 0 \} \) belonged to \( \sigma( A ) \), then \( \| R(is + r, A) \| \) would explode as \( r \to 0^+ \) by Theorem 1.13 in [ST], contradicting the assumption. This means that \( i \mathbb{R} \setminus \{ 0 \} \subset \rho( A ) \), and we infer the bound \( \| R(is, A) \| \leq C/|s| \) for \( s \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{ 0 \} \) by continuity. Take \( q \in (0, 1) \) and \( \lambda = r + is \) with \( s \neq 0 \) and \( |r| \leq q |s|/C \). Set \( \theta = \arctan(q/C) \). Remark 1.17 then shows that \( \lambda \in \rho( A ) \) and the inequality
\[
\| R(\lambda, A) \| \leq \frac{C/(1 - q)}{|s|} \leq \frac{C}{|\lambda|} \cdot \frac{\cos \theta}{|\lambda|}.
\]
Condition \( b) \) also yields the bound \( \| R(\lambda, A) \| \leq c(\alpha)/|\lambda| \) for \( \lambda \in \Sigma_\alpha \) and \( \alpha \in (0, \pi/2) \). These two resolvent estimates show the sectoriality of \( A \) with angle greater than \( \pi/2 \).

4) The implication ‘\( a) \Rightarrow d) \)’ was shown in Theorem 2.23 together with \( T(\cdot) \in C^1(\mathbb{R}_+, \mathcal{B}(X)) \) and \( \frac{d^n}{dt^n} T(t) = AT(t) \) for \( t > 0 \), where \( T(t) \) is given by (2.17).

5) Let property \( d) \) be valid. Let \( t > 0 \) and \( n \in \mathbb{N} \). Since \( AT(t) = T(t - t/n)AT(t/n) \), we obtain that \( T(t)X \subseteq D(A^n) \). Iteratively, it follows that \( T(t)X \subseteq D(A^n) \) and \( A^n T(t) = (AT(t/n))^n \). Condition \( d) \) then implies the bound \( \| A^n T(t) \| \leq (M_1 n)^n t^{-n} \).

Observe that \( e^n = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{n^k}{k!} \geq \frac{n^n}{n!} \). Let \( q \in (0, 1) \). We take \( z \in \mathbb{C}_+ \) with
\[
\tan |\arg z| = \frac{|\text{Im } z|}{\text{Re } z} \leq \frac{q}{e M_1}.
\]
Set \( t = \Re z \). The power series
\[
T(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(z-t)^n}{n!} A^n T(t)
\]
around \( t \) converges absolutely in \( \mathcal{B}(X) \) and uniformly for the above \( z \), since
\[
\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{|z-t|^n}{n!} \frac{M^n}{t^n} \leq \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{q}{eM_1} \right)^n M^n \frac{1}{t^n} = \frac{1}{1-q}.
\]
We have thus extended \( T(\cdot) \) to a bounded differentiable map \( T : \Sigma_\vartheta \to \mathcal{B}(X) \) for \( \vartheta = \arctan \frac{x}{t} \) and every \( q \in (0, 1) \), where \( \|T(z)\| \leq 1/(1-q) \) for \( z \in \Sigma_\vartheta \).

Let \( x \in X \) and \( x^* \in X^* \). For fixed \( t > 0 \), we note that the holomorphic functions \( \langle T(z)T(t)x, x^* \rangle \) and \( \langle T(z+t)x, x^* \rangle \) coincide for \( z \in \mathbb{R}_+ \). Consequently, they are the same for all \( z \in \Sigma_\vartheta \) thanks to the Identity Theorem 2.21 of [A4]. The Hahn-Banach theorem now yields that \( T(z)T(t) = T(z+t) \) for all \( z \in \Sigma_\vartheta \).

In the same way one can replace here \( t > 0 \) by any \( w \in \Sigma_\vartheta \).

It remains to check the strong continuity as \( z \to 0 \). Let \( z \in \Sigma_\vartheta, x \in X \), and \( \varepsilon > 0 \). We fix \( h > 0 \) such that \( \|T(h)x - x\| < \varepsilon \). Using the boundedness and the continuity of \( T(\cdot) \) on \( \Sigma_\vartheta \), we estimate
\[
\|T(z)x - x\| \leq \|T(z)\| \|x - T(h)x\| + \|T(z+h)x - T(h)x\| + \|T(h)x - x\|
\leq \frac{\varepsilon}{1-q} + \|T(z+h) - T(h)\| \|x\| + \varepsilon,
\]
\[
\lim_{z \to 0} \|T(z)x - x\| \leq \left( 1 + \frac{1}{1-q} \right) \varepsilon.
\]
As a result, \( T(z)x \to x \) as \( z \to 0 \) in \( \Sigma_\vartheta \) and claim e) is proved.

6) The first three assertions in the addendum were shown in steps 4) and 5).

In step 4) we have also seen that \( T(\cdot) \in C^1(\mathbb{R}_+, \mathcal{B}(X)) \) and \( \frac{dT}{dt} T(t) = AT(t) \) for \( t > 0 \). Writing \( A^{n-1} T(t) = T(t - \delta) A^{n-1} T(\delta) \) for some \( \delta \in (0, t) \) and \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), an induction yields that \( T(\cdot) \) belongs to \( C^m(\mathbb{R}_+, \mathcal{B}(X)) \) with \( \frac{dT^n}{dt^n} T(t) = A^n T(t) \). \( \square \)

We collect additional information concerning the above theorem.

Remark 2.26. a) Let \( \omega \in \mathbb{R} \) and \( A \) be closed. By rescaling one sees that \( A \) generates an analytic \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( (T(z))_{z \in \Sigma_{\vartheta} \cup \{0\}} \) for some \( \psi > 0 \) such that \( e^{-\omega z} T(z) \) is bounded on all smaller sectors if and only if \( A \) is densely defined and \( A - \omega I \) is sectorial of angle greater than \( \pi/2 \), cf. Section 2.1 in [Lu].

b) Let \( A \) be sectorial of angle \( \varphi > \pi/2 \). In (2.17) one can then replace \( t > 0 \) by \( z \in \Sigma_{\varphi - \pi/2} \) obtaining an analytic semigroup on \( \Sigma_{\varphi - \pi/2} \), see Proposition 2.1.1 of [Lu] or Proposition II.4.3 in [EN]. This means that in Theorem 2.25 the angle \( \psi \) of the semigroup is at least \( \varphi - \pi/2 \). On the other hand, a variant of step 2) in the above proof shows that \( \varphi \geq \psi + \pi/2 \). We thus obtain the equality \( \varphi = \psi + \pi/2 \) for the angles. In a similar way can check that \( \psi \) is the supremum of all \( \vartheta \) for which statement c) of Theorem 2.25 is true.

c) In view of property a) or d) in Theorem 2.25, the shift \( T(t)f = f(\cdot + t) \) cannot be extended to an analytic semigroup on \( C_0(\mathbb{R}) \), cf. Example 2.21. The same is true for every \( C_0 \)-group \( T(t) \) with an unbounded generator since \( T(t) : X \to X \) is then a bijection.
In the next result we combine Theorem 2.25 c) with the Lumer–Phillips Theorem 1.40 to obtain a very convenient sufficient condition for the generation of a bounded analytic \( C_0 \)-semigroup. In this case it is actually contractive on a sector. We note that the corresponding angle can be smaller than the angle \( \psi \) of analyticity, and that there are analytic semigroups which are contractive only on \( \mathbb{R}_+ \) or not even there.

**Corollary 2.27.** Let \( A \) be closed, densely defined and dissipative. Assume that there are numbers \( \lambda_0 > 0 \) such that \( \lambda_0 I - A \) is surjective and \( \vartheta \in (0, \pi/2) \) such that also the operators \( e^{\pm i \vartheta} A \) are dissipative. Then \( A \) generates a bounded analytic \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( T(\cdot) \) of angle \( \psi \geq \vartheta \) with \( \|T(z)\| \leq 1 \) for \( |\arg(z)| \leq \vartheta \).

**Proof.** Theorem 1.40 implies that \( \mathbb{C}_+ \subseteq \rho(A) \). The operators \( I - e^{\pm i \vartheta} (e^{\pm i \vartheta} I - A) \) are thus surjective, and so \( e^{\pm i \vartheta} A \) generate contraction semigroups again by Theorem 1.40. Hence, \( A \) generates a bounded analytic \( C_0 \)-semigroup of angle \( \varphi \geq \vartheta \) due to Theorem 2.25 and Remark 2.26.

We show the contractivity of \( T(z) \) with \( |\arg z| = \alpha \in (0, \vartheta) \). Take \( x \in D(A) \) and \( x^* \in J(x) \). Set \( \zeta = (Ax, x^*) \). By assumption, the numbers \( e^{\pm i \vartheta} \zeta \) belong to \( \mathbb{C}_- \), so that \( \zeta \) is an element of \( C \setminus \Sigma_{\vartheta+\pi/2} \). It follows that \( \text{Re}(e^{\pm i \alpha} \zeta) \leq 0 \), thus the contractivity of \( T(z) \) follows as above.

We now show a somewhat improved version of Example 2.19 combined with Theorem 2.25.

**Corollary 2.28.** Let \( X \) be a Hilbert space and \( A \) be densely defined and selfadjoint with \( (Ax|x) \leq 0 \) for all \( x \in D(A) \). (In this case one writes \( A = A' \leq 0 \) and says that \( A \) is non-positive (definite)). Then \( \sigma(A) \subseteq \mathbb{R}_{\leq 0} \) and \( A \) generates a contractive analytic \( C_0 \)-semigroup of angle \( \frac{\pi}{2} \).

**Proof.** Let \( x \in D(A) \) and \( \lambda > 0 \). Using the non-positivity of \( A \), we compute

\[
\lambda ||x||^2 \leq \text{Re}(\lambda x - Ax|x) \leq ||\lambda x - Ax|| \cdot ||x||,
\]

and infer the lower bound \( ||\lambda x - Ax|| \geq \lambda ||x|| \). Since \( A \) is symmetric, this bound shows that \( \lambda \in \rho(A) \) due to Theorem 4.7 of [ST]. The spectrum of \( A = A' \) is real by the same theorem, and hence \( \sigma(A) \) is contained in \( \mathbb{R}_{\leq 0} \).

We already know that the operator \( A \) is dissipative. For \( \vartheta \in (0, \pi/2) \) the number \( (e^{+i \vartheta} Ax|x) \) belongs to \( \mathbb{C}_- \) as \( (Ax|x) \) is real. The operators \( e^{\pm i \vartheta} A \) are thus dissipative. Taking the supremum over \( \vartheta < \pi/2 \), the second assertion follows from Corollary 2.27.

We now discuss the prototypical example for analytic semigroups, the Dirichlet–Laplacian on \( L^p(G) \).

**Example 2.29.** Let \( p \in (1, \infty) \) and \( A = \Delta \) for \( E = L^p(\mathbb{R}^m) \) and \( D(A) = W^{2,p}(\mathbb{R}^m) \) or for \( E = L^p(G) \) and \( D(A) = W^{2,p}(G) \cap W^{1,p}_0(G) \), assuming that \( G \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m \) is open and bounded with \( \partial G \in C^2 \). Then \( A \) generates a bounded analytic \( C_0 \)-semigroup on \( E \) which is contractive on \( \Sigma_{\kappa_p} \) for

\[
\kappa_p = \frac{\pi}{2} - \arctan \left( \frac{|p-2|}{2\sqrt{p-1}} \right) = \arccot \left( \frac{|p-2|}{2\sqrt{p-1}} \right) \in \left(0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right).
\]
2.3. Analytic semigroups and sectorial operators

Moreover, the graph norm of \( A \) and \( \| \cdot \|_{2,p} \) are equivalent. In particular, for \( p = 2 \) the semigroup has angle \( \pi/2 \). Here one can allow for open and bounded \( G \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m \) with \( \partial G \in C^1 \) where one replaces \( A \) by \( \Delta_D \) from Example 1.52.

**Proof.** 1) The norm equivalence can be shown as after Example 1.52 once the generator property has been proven. For \( p = 2 \) the result follows from Corollary 2.28 since then \( A \) is selfadjoint and dissipative by Examples 1.46 \( \& \) 1.52. For \( p \neq 2 \) we use Corollary 2.27, also allowing for \( G = \mathbb{R}^m \). The domain \( D(A) \) is dense by Proposition 4.13 in [FA]. Theorems 9.9 and 9.15 in [GT] show that \( I - A \) is surjective.\(^5\) Below we check that the operators \( e^{\pm \vartheta A} \) are dissipative for \( \vartheta \in [0, \kappa_p] \).\(^6\)

2) Let \( u \in D(A) \setminus \{0\} \). First, take \( p \geq 2 \). We define \( u^* = |u|^{p-2} \). Recall that \( \|u\|_{2,p}^p u^* \in J(u) \) by Example 1.31. Assume for a moment that \( u \in C^1(G) \) so that \( u^* \in C^1(G) \). Using \( u^* = (|u|^{p-1}) \), we compute

\[
\partial_k u^* = |u|^{p-2} \partial_k u + \frac{p-2}{2} (u \partial_k u + u \partial_k \pi) u
= |u|^{p-4} (\pi u \partial_k \pi + (p-2) \pi \Re(\pi \partial_k u))
\]

for \( k \in \{1, \ldots, m\} \). The functions on the right are bounded in \( L^p \) by \( c \|\partial_k u\|_p \|u|^{p-2} \) due to Hölder’s inequality with \( \frac{1}{p'} = \frac{1}{p} + \frac{p-2}{p} \). Here and below it is crucial that \( p \geq 2 \). To pass to a general \( u \in W_0^{1,p}(G) \), we approximate it in \( W_0^{1,p}(G) \) by \( u_n \in C_c^\infty(G) \) using Remark 1.42. Passing to a subsequence, we can assume that \( u_n \) tends to \( u \) a.e. and that \( |u_n| \leq \varphi \) for a fixed function \( \varphi \in L^p(G) \). Dominated convergence then implies that \( |u_n|^{p-2} \) converges to \( |u|^{p-2} \) in \( L^p/(p-2)(G) \), and analogously for the other factors without derivatives. We can thus extend the above formula for \( \partial_k u^* \) to \( u \in W_0^{1,p}(G) \), showing that \( u^* \) belongs to \( W_0^{1,p}(G) \). It follows

\[
\partial_k u \partial_k u^* = |u|^{p-4} (\pi u \partial_k u)^2 + (p-2) (\Re(\pi \partial_k u))^2 + \Im(\pi \partial_k u) \Re(\pi \partial_k u) + (p-2) \Im(\pi \partial_k u) \Re(\pi \partial_k u).
\]

Formula (1.21) and \( u \in D(A) \) then yield

\[
\langle \Delta u, u^* \rangle = - \int_G \nabla u \cdot \nabla u^* \, dx = - \int_G |u|^{p-4} ((p-1) |\Re(\pi \nabla u)|^2 + |\Im(\pi \nabla u)|^2)
+ i(p-2) |u|^{p-4} \Im(\pi \nabla u) \Re(\pi \nabla u)) \, dx,
\]

and \( A = \Delta \) is dissipative. The inequalities of Hörder and Young further imply

\[
|\Im(\Delta u, u^*)| \leq |p-2| \int_G |u|^{p-4} |\Re(\pi \nabla u)| |u|^{p-2} |\Im(\pi \nabla u)| \, dx
\leq |p-2| \left[ \sqrt{p-1} \int_G |u|^{p-4} |\Re(\pi \nabla u)|^2 \, dx \right] \left[ \frac{1}{\sqrt{p-1}} \int_G |u|^{p-4} |\Im(\pi \nabla u)|^2 \, dx \right]^{\frac{1}{2}}
\leq \frac{|p-2| \sqrt{p-1}}{2} \int_G |u|^{p-4} |\Re(\pi \nabla u)|^2 \, dx + \frac{|p-2|}{2 \sqrt{p-1}} \int_G |u|^{p-4} |\Im(\pi \nabla u)|^2 \, dx
\]

\(^5\)These are a deeper results based on harmonic analysis for \( G = \mathbb{R}^m \) and \( p \neq 2 \) (the so-called Calderón–Zygmund theory) and also on PDE methods for bounded \( G \).

\(^6\)In the lectures the following arguments were presented only for \( m = 1 \) and \( p \geq 2 \).
$$\arg z = \arctan \left( \frac{|m|}{1} \right) \leq \arctan \left( \frac{|p - 2|}{2\sqrt{p - 1}} \right) = \frac{\pi}{2} - \kappa_p.$$  

For $\vartheta \in [0, \kappa_p]$ it follows $|\arg(e^{\pm i\vartheta}z)| \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ and the dissipativity of the operators $e^{\pm i\vartheta}A$. Corollary 2.27 thus implies the assertion for $p > 2$.

3) Next, let $p \in (1, 2)$. We have to approximate $u \in D(A) \setminus \{0\}$ in $W^{2,p}(G)$ by more regular functions. If $G = \mathbb{R}^m$, we know from Remark 1.42 that $C_c^\infty(\mathbb{R}^m)$ is dense in $W^{2,p}(\mathbb{R}^m)$. For bounded $G$, we look at $f = u - \Delta u \in L^p(G)$. Take $q \in (m, \infty)$. Using Proposition 4.13 of [FA], we find functions $f_n \in L^q(G)$ that tend to $f$ in $L^q(G)$ as $n \to \infty$. By step 2), the maps $u_n = (I - \Delta)^{-1}f_n$ belong to $W^{2,q}(G) \cap W_0^{1,q}(G)$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Moreover, $u_n$ is an element of $C^1(\overline{G})$ due to Sobolev’s embedding Theorem 3.26 of [ST]. We further deduce that $u_n$ converges to $u$ in $W^{2,p}(G)$ from Lemma 9.17 of [GT], where we put $L = \Delta - I$. We now drop the index $n$ for a moment and assume that $u$ is contained in $C_c^\infty(\mathbb{R}^m)$, respectively in $C^1(\overline{G}) \cap W^{2,p}(G) \cap W_0^{1,p}(G)$.

To avoid singularities at zeros of $u$, we further replace $u^*$ by $u^*_\varepsilon = u^{p-2}\varepsilon$ with $\varepsilon \leq u^\varepsilon := \sqrt{\varepsilon + |u|^2}$ for $\varepsilon > 0$. We note that $u^*_\varepsilon$ is an element of $C_c^\infty(\mathbb{R}^m)$, respectively of $W^{1,p'}(G) \cap C^1(G)$. As above, we calculate

$$\partial_k u^*_\varepsilon = u^{p-4}_\varepsilon (\varepsilon \partial_k \pi + \pi \partial_k \nu + (p - 1) \Re(\pi \partial_k u) \pi),$$

$$\partial_k u \partial_k u^*_\varepsilon = u^{p-4}_\varepsilon (\varepsilon |\partial_k u|^2 + (p - 1) (\Re(\pi \partial_k u))^2 + (\Im(\pi \partial_k u))^2 + i(p - 2) \Im(\pi \partial_k u) \Re(\pi \partial_k u)).$$

Formula (1.21) thus yields the inequalities

$$\begin{align*}
- \Re(\Delta u, u^*_\varepsilon) &= \int_G u^{p-4}_\varepsilon (\varepsilon |\nabla u|^2 + (p - 1) |\Re(\pi \nabla u)|^2 + |\Im(\pi \nabla u)|^2) \ dx \\
&\geq \int_G u^{p-4}_\varepsilon ((p - 1) |\Re(\pi \nabla u)|^2 + |\Im(\pi \nabla u)|^2) \ dx, \\
| \Im(\Delta u, u^*_\varepsilon) | &\leq \frac{|p - 2|}{2\sqrt{p - 1}} \int_G u^{p-4}_\varepsilon ((p - 1) |\Re(\pi \nabla u)|^2 + |\Im(\pi \nabla u)|^2) \ dx \\
&= \frac{|p - 2|}{2\sqrt{p - 1}} \Re(\Delta u, u^*_\varepsilon).
\end{align*}$$

Observe that $|u^*_\varepsilon| \leq |u^*| \in L^{p'}(G)$ and that $u^\varepsilon$ converges pointwise to $u$ as $\varepsilon \to 0$. So $u^*_\varepsilon$ tends to $u^*$ in $L^{p'}(G)$ by dominated convergence. (Here we set $u^*(x) = 0$ if $u(x) = 0$.) It follows

$$| \Im(\Delta u, u^*) | \leq - \frac{|p - 2|}{2\sqrt{p - 1}} \Re(\Delta u, u^*).$$

So far we have assumed that $u = u_n$ belongs to $C_c^\infty(\mathbb{R}^m)$, respectively to $C^1(\overline{G}) \cap W^{2,p}(G) \cap W_0^{1,p}(G)$. As observe above, these sets are dense in $W^{2,p}(\mathbb{R}^m)$,
respectively in $W^{2,p}(G) \cap W^{1,p}_0(G)$. As in step 2 we also see that the functions $u^*_n$ converge to $u^*$ in $L^p$. Hence, the inequality in display is true for all $u \in D(A)$. We can now proceed as for $p \geq 2$ and conclude that $e^{\pm i\theta \Delta}$ are dissipative for $0 \leq \theta \leq \kappa_p$. The assertion for $p < 2$ then also follows from Corollary 2.27. \qed

For more general generation result we refer to [Pa], [Ta1] and Chapter 3 of [Lu], where the latter focusses on the sup-norm setting. The case $p = 1$ is treated in [Ta2]. These works make heavy use of results from partial differential equations. In Example 1.52 we have studied the Dirichlet–Laplacian on $L^2(G)$ in a self-contained way using functional analytic methods, though without computing the domain explicitly. This approach can be extended to more general operators and with more effort to $L^p(G)$, see [Ou].

**Inhomogeneous evolution equations.** If $A$ generates an analytic semigroup, then the inhomogeneous problem (2.6) exhibits better regularity properties than in the general case. The mild solution is ‘almost’ differentiable in $X$ for continuous inhomogeneities $f$, and one needs very little extra regularity of $f$ to obtain the differentiability of the solution.

Let $x \in X$, $b > 0$, $f \in C([0,b], X)$ and $A - \omega I$ be densely defined and sectorial of angle $\varphi > \frac{\pi}{2}$ for some $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$. We study the inhomogeneous evolution equation

$$u'(t) = Au(t) + f(t), \quad t \in (0,b] =: J, \quad u(0) = x. \quad (2.19)$$

It has the mild solution

$$u(t) = T(t)x + \int_0^t T(t-s)f(s)\,ds =: T(t)x + v(t), \quad t \in [0,b], \quad (2.20)$$

where $A$ generates the analytic $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$. By Definition 2.5, a solution of (2.19) on $J$ is a map $u \in C(J, X) \cap C^1(J, X)$ with $u(t) \in D(A)$ for all $t \in J$ which satisfies (2.19). We need the Hölder space $C^\alpha([a,b], X)$ with exponent $\alpha \in (0, 1)$. It contains all functions $u \in C([a,b], X)$ fulfilling

$$[u]_\alpha := \sup_{a \leq s < t \leq b} \frac{\|u(t) - u(s)\|}{(t-s)^\alpha} < \infty,$$

and it becomes a Banach space when endowed with the norm

$$\|u\|_\alpha := \|u\|_\infty + [u]_\alpha.$$

For $0 < \alpha < \beta < 1$ we have the embeddings

$$C^1([a,b], X) \hookrightarrow C^\beta([a,b], X) \hookrightarrow C^{\alpha}([a,b], X) \hookrightarrow C([a,b], X). \quad (2.21)$$

We now show the results indicated above.

**Theorem 2.30.** Let $x \in X$, $b > 0$, $f \in C([0,b], X)$, and $A - \omega I$ be densely defined sectorial of angle $\varphi > \frac{\pi}{2}$ for some $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$. Then the mild solution $u$ of (2.19) satisfies the following assertions.

a) We have $u \in C^\beta([\varepsilon,b], X)$ for all $\beta \in (0, 1)$ and $\varepsilon \in (0,b)$. If also $x \in D(A)$, we can even take $\varepsilon = 0$ here.

b) If $f \in C^\alpha([0,b], X)$ for some $\alpha \in (0,1)$, then $u$ solves (2.19) on $(0,b]$. If also $x \in D(A)$, then $u$ solves (2.19) on $[0,b]$. 

Remark 2.31. For \( \alpha = 0 \), Theorem 2.30 b) is wrong due to Example 4.1.7 in [Lu]. One thus needs a bit of extra regularity of \( f \). Much more detailed and deeper information on the regularity of \( u \) can be found in Chapter 4 of [Lu], where also ‘spatial regularity’ is studied (and not only time regularity as above), see also the exercises and Chapter 4 of [NE].

Proof. Due to Theorem 2.25 and Remark 2.26, the function \( T(\cdot) x \) solves (2.19) on \( \mathbb{R}_+ \) with \( f = 0 \) if \( x \in X \) and on \( \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \) if \( x \in D(A) \). In particular, \( T(\cdot) x \) belongs to the space \( C^1([\varepsilon, b], X) \) for all \( \varepsilon > 0 \) (and for \( \varepsilon = 0 \) if \( x \in D(A) \)). In view of (2.21), thus we only have to consider the function \( v \) from (2.20).

To show assertion a), let \( 0 \leq s < t \leq b \). Theorem 2.25 and Remark 2.26 yield constants \( c_j = c_j(b) \) with \( j \in \{0, 1\} \) such that \( \|T(t)\| \leq c_0 \) and \( \|t A T(t)\| \leq c_1 \). We first note that \( \|v\|_{\infty} \leq c_0 b\|f\|_{\infty} \). The increment of \( v \) is split into the terms

\[
v(t) - v(s) = \int_s^t T(t - \tau) f(\tau) \, d\tau + \int_0^s (T(t - \tau) - T(s - \tau)) f(\tau) \, d\tau =: I_1 + I_2.
\]

It follows

\[
\|I_1\| \leq c_0 |t - s| \|f\|_{\infty} \leq c_0 b^{1-\beta} |t - s|^\beta \|f\|_{\infty}.
\]

For \( t > s > \tau \geq 0 \), we further compute

\[
T(t - \tau) - T(s - \tau) = (T(t - s) - I) T(s - \tau) = \int_0^{t-s} (\sigma) A T(s - \tau) \, d\sigma,
\]

using that \( T(s - \tau) X \subseteq D(A) \) by Theorem 2.25. This formula leads to the inequality

\[
\|T(t - \tau) - T(s - \tau)\| \leq \frac{c_0 c_1 |t - s|}{|s - \tau|},
\]

which is not good enough since the denominator is not integrable in \( \tau < s \). Since it also gives more than the needed factor \( |t - s|^\beta \), we only apply the above bound to a fraction of the integrand in \( I_2 \), obtaining

\[
\|I_2\| \leq \int_0^s \|T(t - \tau) - T(s - \tau)\| \|T(t - \tau) - T(s - \tau)\|^{1-\beta} \|f(\tau)\| \, d\tau \\
\leq \int_0^s c_0 c_1 (\frac{|t - s|^\beta}{|s - \tau|^\beta} (2c_0)^{1-\beta} \|f\|_{\infty} = \frac{2^{1-\beta} c_0 c_1^{\beta} |t - s|^\beta}{1 - \beta} \|f\|_{\infty} |t - s|^\beta.
\]

Hence, \( v \) belongs to \( C^\beta([0, b], X) \) and there is a constant \( c = c(\beta, b, c_0, c_1) \) such that \( \|v\|_{C^\beta} \leq c \|f\|_{\infty} \). (Observe that \( c \) explodes as \( \beta \to 1 \).)

We next treat part b). In view of Lemma 2.8 (with \( u_0 = 0 \)), we have to show that \( v \in C([0, b], [D(A)]) \). Let \( t \in [0, b] \). Inserting the constant vector \( f(t) \) and substituting \( \tau = t - s \), we obtain

\[
v(t) = \int_0^t T(t - s)(f(s) - f(t)) \, ds + \int_0^t T(\tau)f(t) \, d\tau =: v_1(t) + v_2(t).
\]

As in Lemma 2.8, one checks the continuity of the maps \( v_1, v_2 : [0, b] \to X \). By Lemmas 1.19 and 1.13, the function \( v_2 \) takes values in \( D(A) \) and \( Av_2 =
we then deduce that
\[ v_{1,\varepsilon}(t) := \int_0^{t-\varepsilon} T(t-s)(f(s) - f(t)) \, ds = T(\varepsilon) \int_0^{t-\varepsilon} T(t-\varepsilon-s)(f(s) - f(t)) \, ds \]
is an element of \( D(A) \) and that \( Av_{1,\varepsilon} \in C([\varepsilon, b], X) \). Moreover, \( v_{1,\varepsilon}(t) \) tends to \( v_1(t) \) as \( \varepsilon \to 0 \), and from \( AT(\varepsilon) \in \mathcal{B}(X) \) we infer
\[ Av_{1,\varepsilon}(t) = AT(\varepsilon) \int_0^{t-\varepsilon} T(t-\varepsilon-s)(f(s) - f(t)) \, ds = \int_0^{t-\varepsilon} AT(t-s)(f(s) - f(t)) \, ds. \]
Next, let \( 0 < \varepsilon < \eta < \varepsilon_0 \leq t \). It follows
\[ Av_{1,\varepsilon}(t) - Av_{1,\eta}(t) = \int_{t-\eta}^{t-\varepsilon} AT(t-s)(f(s) - f(t)) \, ds. \]
From Theorem 2.25 we then deduce that
\[ \| Av_{1,\varepsilon}(t) - Av_{1,\eta}(t) \| \leq c_1 \int_{t-\eta}^{t-\varepsilon} (t-s)^{-1}(t-s)^\alpha [f]_\alpha \, ds \]
\[ = c_1 [f]_\alpha (t-s)_{1-\alpha}^{t-\eta} = c_1 [f]_\alpha (\eta^\alpha - \varepsilon^\alpha). \]
Hence, \( Av_{1,\varepsilon} \) converges in \( C([\varepsilon_0, b], X) \) as \( \varepsilon \to 0 \). Since \( A \) is closed, the vector \( v_1(t) \) is contained in \( D(A) \), and \( (Av_{1,\varepsilon})_\varepsilon \) has the limit \( Av_1 \) in \( C([\varepsilon_0, b], X) \) for all \( \varepsilon_0 > 0 \), so that \( v_1 \in C((0, b], [D(A)]) \). Finally, \( v_1(0) = 0 \in D(A) \) and
\[ \| Av_1(t) \| = \lim_{\varepsilon \to 0} \| Av_{1,\varepsilon}(t) \| \leq \lim_{\varepsilon \to 0} \int_0^{t-\varepsilon} c_1 |t-s|^{-1}[f]_\alpha(t-s)^\alpha \, ds \leq \frac{c_1}{\alpha} [f]_\alpha t^\alpha \]
tends to 0 as \( t \to 0 \). We conclude that \( Av \in C((0, b], X) \) as required. \( \square \)

The following example is a straightforward consequence of our results.

**Example 2.32.** Let \( G \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m \) be bounded and open with a \( C^1 \) boundary, \( u_0 \in L^2(G) \), and \( f \in C^\alpha([0, b], L^2(G)) \) for some \( \alpha \in (0, 1) \). Theorem 2.30 and Example 2.29 then yield a unique solution \( u \) in \( C^1((0, b], L^2(G)) \cap C((0, b], [D(\Delta_D)]) \cap C((0, b], L^2(G)) \) of the inhomogeneous diffusion equation
\[ u'(t) = \Delta_D u(t) + f(t), \quad 0 < t \leq b, \quad u(0) = u_0, \quad (2.22) \]
where \( \Delta_D \) is the Dirichlet–Laplacian from Example 1.52 with \( D(A) \hookrightarrow W^{1,2}_0(G) \).

Next, we also assume that \( \partial G \in C^2 \) so that \( D(A) = W^{2,2}(G) \cap W^{1,2}_0(G) \) as noted after this example. Set \( f(t, x) = (f(t))(x) \) for all \( 0 < t \leq b \) and almost every \( x \in G \). Then we can interpret (2.22) more concretely as the partial differential equation
\[ \partial_t u(t, x) = \Delta u(t, x) + f(t, x), \quad t \in (0, b], \quad x \in G, \]
\[ u(t, x) = 0, \quad t \in (0, b], \quad x \in \partial G, \]
\[ u(0, x) = u_0(x), \quad x \in G. \]
In general, here the first and third equality hold almost everywhere and the second one in the sense of trace. The solutions become more regular if we improve the regularity of \( u_0 \), \( f \) or \( \partial G \), see Section 5 of [Lu]. \( \diamond \)
CHAPTER 3

Perturbation and approximation

So far we have only looked at one given generator $A$. In this chapter we add another operator to $A$ or we approximate it. Both procedures are of great importance both from a theoretical perspective and for applications.

3.1. Perturbation of generators

Let $A$ generate a $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ and $B$ be linear. We study the question whether $'A + B'$ generates a $C_0$-semigroup $S(\cdot)$, and then also whether $S(\cdot)$ inherits properties of $T(\cdot)$. Positive results in this direction will allow us to transfer our knowledge about $A$ to larger classes of operators. In this setting one faces two basic problems.

First, how one defines $'A + B'$ if $D(A) \cap D(B)$ is ‘small’ (e.g., equal to $\{0\}$ as in Example III.5.10 in [EN])? In this section we only treat the basic case that $D(A) \subseteq D(B)$. Unless something else is said, we then put $D(A + B) = D(A)$.

Second, if $B$ with $D(B) \supseteq D(A)$ is ‘too large’, it can happen that $A + B$ fails to be a generator. For instance, let $A$ be a generator whose spectrum is unbounded to the left (e.g., $d/ds$ on $C_0(\mathbb{R}_{\leq 0})$ with $D(A) = C_0^1(\mathbb{R}_{\leq 0})$ or $\Delta$ on $L^2(\mathbb{R}^m)$ as in Example 1.28, resp. 1.46), and $B = -(1 + \delta)A$ for any $\delta > 0$. The sum $A + B = -\delta A$ thus has the spectral bound $\sigma(A + B) = \infty$ and so $A + B$ is not a generator by Proposition 1.21. Below we restrict ourselves to ‘small’ perturbations $B$ employing the following concept.

**Definition 3.1.** Let $A$ and $B$ be linear operators with $D(A) \subseteq D(B)$. The map $B$ is called $A$-bounded (or relatively bounded) if

$$\forall y \in D(A): \quad \|By\| \leq a\|Ay\| + b\|y\|. \quad (3.1)$$

for some constants $a, b \geq 0$. In this case we set $D(A + B) = D(A)$ (unless something else is specified). The $A$-bound of $B$ is the infimum of the numbers $a \geq 0$ for which (3.1) is valid with some $b = b(a) \geq 0$.

We note that $B$ is $A$-bounded if and only $B$ belongs to $\mathcal{B}(\|D(A)\|, X)$. We derive a quantitative version of this equivalence involving the resolvent.

Let $A$ be closed with $\lambda \in \rho(A)$ and $B$ be linear with $D(A) \subseteq D(B)$. First assume that $\gamma := \|BR(\lambda, A)\|$ is finite. Let $y \in D(A)$. We compute

$$\|By\| = \|BR(\lambda, A)(\lambda y - Ay)\| \leq \gamma\|Ay\| + \gamma\|\lambda\|\|y\|, \quad (3.2)$$

which is (3.1) with $a = \gamma$. Conversely, let $B$ be $A$-bounded and $x \in X$. Using (3.1) and $AR(\lambda, A) = \lambda R(\lambda, A) - I$, we see that $BR(\lambda, A) \in \mathcal{B}(X)$ estimating

$$\|BR(\lambda, A)x\| \leq a\|AR(\lambda, A)x\| + b\|R(\lambda, A)x\|$$

$$\leq (a\|\lambda\|\|R(\lambda, A)\| + a + b\|R(\lambda, A)\|)\|x\|. \quad (3.3)$$
3.1. Perturbation of generators

The next result says that $B$ is $A$-bounded if it is of ‘lower order’.

**Lemma 3.2.** Let $A$ and $B$ be linear operators satisfying $D(A) \subseteq D(B)$ and
\[ \|By\| \leq c\|Ay\|^{\alpha} \|y\|^{1-\alpha} \]
for all $y \in D(A)$ and some constants $c \geq 0$ and $\alpha \in [0,1)$. Then the map $B$ has the $A$-bound $0$. In the assumption one can replace $\|Ay\|$ by $\|y\|_A$.

**Proof.** As the case $\alpha = 0$ is clear, we let $\alpha \in (0,1)$. Recall Young’s inequality $ab \leq a^{p'/p} + b^{p'/p'}$ from Analysis 1, where $a,b \geq 0$, $p \in (1,\infty)$ and $p' = \frac{p}{p-1}$. Taking $p = \frac{1}{\alpha} > 1$ and $p' = \frac{1}{1-\alpha}$, for $y \in D(A)$ and $\varepsilon > 0$ we compute
\[ \|By\| \leq \varepsilon\|Ay\|^{\alpha} \varepsilon^{-1} \|y\|^{1-\alpha} \leq \alpha \varepsilon^{\frac{1}{\alpha}} \|Ay\| + c\varepsilon^{1-\alpha} (1 - \alpha) \varepsilon^{-\frac{1}{1-\alpha}} \|y\| \].

If one replaces $\|Ay\|$ by $\|y\|_A$, one only obtains an extra summand $\alpha \varepsilon^{\frac{1}{\alpha}} \|y\|$.

Our arguments are based on the next perturbation result for the resolvent.

**Lemma 3.3.** Let $A$ be closed with $\lambda \in \rho(A)$ and $B$ be $A$-bounded with $\|BR(\lambda, A)\| < 1$. Then the sum $A + B$ with $D(A + B) = D(A)$ is closed, $\lambda$ is contained in $\rho(A + B)$, and the resolvent satisfies
\[ R(\lambda, A + B) = R(\lambda, A) \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (BR(\lambda, A))^n = R(\lambda, A)(I - BR(\lambda, A))^{-1}, \]
\[ \|R(\lambda, A + B)\| \leq \frac{\|R(\lambda, A)\|}{1 - \|BR(\lambda, A)\|}. \]

Moreover, the graph norms of $A$ and $A + B$ on $D(A)$ are equivalent.

**Proof.** In view of Theorem 1.27 in [ST], we only have to show the last assertion. Note that $\|(I - BR(\lambda, A))^{-1}\| \leq 1/(1 - q)$ with $q = \|BR(\lambda, A)\|$ by Proposition 4.24 in [FA]. For $y \in D(A)$ we estimate
\[ \|y\|_A = \|y\| + \|AR(\lambda, A + B)(\lambda I - A - B)y\| \]
\[ = \|y\| + \|AR(\lambda, A)(I - BR(\lambda, A))^{-1}(\lambda y - (A + B)y)\| \]
\[ \leq \|y\| + (|\lambda| \|R(\lambda, A)\| + 1)\frac{1}{1-q} (|\lambda| \|y\| + \|(A + B)y\|) \leq c\|y\|_A + B \]
for a constant $c > 0$. The converse inequality is shown similarly.

We start with the **bounded perturbation theorem** which is the prototype for the desired results. It also characterizes the perturbed semigroup $S(\cdot)$ in terms of an integral equation and describes it by a series expansion, both only involving $T(\cdot)$ and $B$. These formulas allow us to transfer certain properties from $T(\cdot)$ to $S(\cdot)$, cf. Example 3.6, the exercises or Section III.1 in [EN].

**Theorem 3.4.** Let $A$ generate a $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ satisfying $\|T(t)\| \leq Me^{\omega t}$ for all $t \geq 0$ and constants $M \geq 1$ and $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$. Let $B \in \mathcal{B}(X)$. Then the sum $A + B$ with $D(A + B) = D(A)$ generates the $C_0$-semigroup $S(\cdot)$ which fulfills
\[ \|S(t)\| \leq Me^{(\omega + M\|B\|)t}, \] (3.4)
\[ S(t)x = T(t)x + \int_0^t T(t-s)BS(s)x \, ds, \] (3.5)
S(t)x = T(t)x + \int_0^t S(t-s)BT(s)x \, ds, \quad (3.6)

\begin{align*}
S(t) &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} S_n(t), \quad S_0(t) := T(t), \quad S_{n+1}(t)x := \int_0^t T(t-s)BS_n(s)x \, ds, \quad (3.7)

\end{align*}

for all \( t \geq 0 \), \( n \in \mathbb{N}_0 \), and \( t \geq 0 \). The Dyson-Phillips series in (3.7) converges in \( \mathcal{B}(X) \) uniformly on compact subsets of \( \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \). The operator family \( (S(t))_{t \geq 0} \) is the only strongly continuous family of operators solving (3.5). The graph norms of \( A + B \) on \( D(A) \) are equivalent.

**Proof.** 1) Observe that \( A + B \) is densely defined. The operator \( A - \omega I \) generates the \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( \tilde{T}(\cdot) = (e^{-\omega t}T(t))_{t \geq 0} \) by Lemma 1.18. As in Remark 1.26 we define the norm

\[ ||x|| = \sup_{s \geq 0} ||e^{-\omega s}T(s)x|| \]

on \( X \) satisfying \( ||x|| \leq ||x|| \leq M||x|| \) for \( x \in X \) and for which \( \tilde{T}(\cdot) \) becomes contractive. (We also denote the induced operator norm by triple bars.) For \( x \in X \), we estimate

\[ ||Bx|| \leq M||Bx|| \leq M||B|| ||x|| \leq M||B|| ||x|| . \]

Take \( \lambda > M||B|| \geq ||B|| \). The Hille-Yosida estimate (1.16) thus implies the inequality \( ||BR(\lambda, A - \omega I)|| \leq ||B||/\lambda < 1 \). From Lemma 3.3 we then deduce that \( \lambda \) belongs to \( \rho(A + B - \omega I) \), the bound

\[ ||BR(\lambda, A + B - \omega)|| \leq \frac{\lambda^{-1}}{1 - \lambda^{-1}||B||} = \frac{1}{\lambda - ||B||} , \]

and the equivalence of the graph norms. The Hille–Yosida Theorem 1.27 now shows that \( A+B-\omega I \) generates a \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( \tilde{S}(\cdot) \) on \( (X, ||\cdot||) \) with \( \|\tilde{S}(t)\| \leq e^{||B||t} \leq e^{M||B||t} \) for all \( t \geq 0 \). Finally, by Lemma 1.18 the sum \( A + B \) generates the semigroup given by \( S(t) = e^{at}\tilde{S}(t) \) fulfilling

\[ ||S(t)x|| \leq ||S(t)x|| \leq e^{ct}e^{M||B||t} ||x|| \leq Me^{(\omega + M||B||)t} ||x|| \]

for all \( t \geq 0 \) and \( x \in X \), as asserted.

2) We next prove (3.5), (3.6), and uniqueness. For every \( x \in D(A) \), the function \( u = S(\cdot)x \) solves the problem

\[ u'(t) = (A + B)u(t) = Au(t) + f(t), \quad t \geq 0, \quad u(0) = x, \]

where \( f := BS(\cdot)x : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \to X \) is continuous. Proposition 2.6 then shows that \( u \) is given by

\[ S(t)x = u(t) = T(t)x + \int_0^t T(t-s)f(s) \, ds = T(t)x + \int_0^t T(t-s)BS(s)x \, ds \]

for \( t \geq 0 \). We derive (3.5) for all \( x \in X \) by approximation since \( D(A) \) is dense in \( X \) and all operators (in particular \( B \)) are bounded uniformly on \( s \in [0, t] \). Equation (3.6) is established in the same way, using that \( v = T(\cdot)x \) solves

\[ v'(t) = (A + B)v(t) - Bv(t), \quad t \geq 0, \quad v(0) = x \in D(A). \]
Let $U(\cdot)$ be another strongly continuous solution of (3.5). For $x \in X$, $t \geq 0$, $t_0 > 0$ and $t \in [0, t_0]$, we estimate
\[
\|S(t)x - U(t)x\| = \left\| \int_0^t T(t-s)B(S(s)x - U(s)x) \, ds \right\| \\
\leq Me^{\omega t_0} \|B\| \int_0^t \|S(s)x - U(s)x\| \, ds.
\]
Gronwall’s inequality from Satz 4.14 in Analysis 2 now yields that $S(t)x - U(t)x = 0$, and hence $U(\cdot) = S(\cdot)$.

3) Let $t \geq 0$ and all $x \in X$. Concerning (3.7), we note that $S_1(\cdot)$ is strongly continuous and satisfies
\[
\|S_1(t)x\| \leq \int_0^t Me^{\omega(t-s)} \|B\|e^{\omega s} \|x\| \, ds = M^2 t e^{\omega t} \|B\| \|x\|.
\]
By induction one further deduces the strong continuity $S_n(\cdot)$ and the inequality
\[
\|S_n(t)\| \leq \frac{M^{n+1} \|B\|^n}{n!} t^n e^{\omega t}
\]
for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. The series in (3.7) thus converges in $B(X)$ to some $R(t)$ uniformly on compact subsets of $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$. Hence, $R(\cdot)$ is strongly continuous and fulfills
\[
\int_0^t T(t-s)BR(s)x \, ds = \sum_{n=0}^\infty \int_0^t T(t-s)BS_n(s)x \, ds = \sum_{j=1}^\infty S_j(t)x
\]
\[
= R(t)x - T(t)x.
\]
The uniqueness of (3.5) says that $R(t) = S(t)$. \hfill \Box

Using also $-A$, we extend the above result to the group case.

**Corollary 3.5.** Let $A$ generate the $C_0$-group $T(\cdot)$ satisfying $\|T(t)\| \leq Me^{\omega |t|}$ for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$ and constants $M \geq 1$ and $\omega \geq 0$. Let $B \in B(X)$. Then the sum $A + B$ with $D(A + B) = D(A)$ generates the $C_0$-group $S(\cdot)$ which fulfills $\|S(t)\| \leq Me^{(\omega + M)\|B\| |t|}$ and (3.5)–(3.7) for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$.

**Proof.** Theorem 1.30 says that the operators $\pm A$ generate $C_0$-semigroups with $\|T_\pm(t)\| \leq Me^{\omega t}$ for $t \geq 0$. From Theorem 3.4 we then deduce that $A + B$ and $-(A + B)$ are generators of $C_0$-semigroups $S_\pm(\cdot)$ with $\|S_\pm(t)\| \leq Me^{(\omega + M)\|B\| |t|}$. By Theorem 1.30, $A + B$ thus generates a $C_0$-group $S(\cdot)$ with the asserted bound. One shows (3.5)–(3.7) for $t \in \mathbb{R}$ as in the previous proof. \hfill \Box

If a model involves the mass density of a substance, it is natural to require that a non-negative initial function leads to a non-negative solution. We will come back to this issue at the end the chapter. Here we first discuss whether such a behavior is inherited under perturbations.

**Example 3.6.** Let $E = C_0(U)$ or $E = L^p(\mu)$ for an open set $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$, respectively for a measure space $(\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{A}, \mu)$ and $1 \leq p < \infty$. We set $E_+ = \{f \in E \mid f \geq 0\}$.\footnote{We note that these concepts do not fit to our usual notation such as $\mathbb{R}_+ = (0, \infty)$ for the set of positive real numbers. A function $f \geq 0$ is still called non-negative.} Let $T(\cdot)$ be a $C_0$-semigroup on $E$ with generator $A$ such that
3.1. Perturbation of generators

\[ T(t)f \geq 0 \] for all \( f \in E_+ \) and \( t \geq 0 \). We call such operators or semigroups positive. We look at two classes of perturbations.

a) Let \( B \in \mathcal{B}(E) \) be also positive. Take \( f \in E_+ \). The function \( T(t-s)BT(s)f \) is then non-negative for each \( s \in [0,t] \). Since \( E_+ \) is closed in \( E \), we infer that \( S_1(t)f \geq 0 \) and, by induction, that all terms \( S_n(t)f \) in the Dyson-Phillips series (3.7) belong to \( E_+ \). So the semigroup \( S(\cdot) \) generated by \( A + B \) is positive and satisfies \( S(t) \geq T(t) = S_0(t) \); i.e., \( S(t)f \geq T(t)f \) for all \( f \in E_+ \).

b) Let \( Bf = bf \) for a real-valued function \( b \in C_0(U) \) if \( E = C_0(U) \), resp. \( b \in L^\infty(\mu) \) if \( E = L^p(\mu) \). For all \( f \in E_+ \) we then have \( (B+\|b_\infty\|I)_+ f \geq 0 \) so that \( B_0 := B + \|b_\infty\|I \) is positive. By part a), \( A + B_0 \) generates a positive \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( \tilde{S}(\cdot) \) and so \( A + B = A + B_0 - \|b_\infty\|I \) generates the positive \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( S(\cdot) \) given by \( S(t) = e^{-\|b_\infty\|t} \tilde{S}(t) \geq e^{-\|b_\infty\|t}T(t) \).

As a simple example, we take \( U = S = \mathbb{R} \) and \( A = \frac{d}{dt} \) with \( D(A) = C_0^1(\mathbb{R}) \) if \( E = C_0(U) \), resp. \( D(A) = W^{1,p}(\mathbb{R}) \) if \( E = L^p(\mu) \). Because \( A \) generates the positive translation semigroup on \( E \), the operator \( Cu = u' + bu \) with \( D(C) = D(A) \) also generates a positive \( C_0 \)-semigroup.

We next use Corollary 3.5 to treat a damped or excited wave equation.

**Example 3.7.** Let \( G \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m \) be bounded and open with a \( C^1 \)-boundary and \( \Delta_B \) be the Dirichlet–Laplacian on \( L^2(G) \) given by Example 1.52. We set \( E = Y \times L^2(G) \), where \( Y = W^{1,2}_0(G) \) is endowed with the norm \( \|v\|_Y = ||\nabla v||_2 \) from (1.33). As in Example 1.53 we define the operator

\[ A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & I \\ \Delta_D & 0 \end{pmatrix} \] with \( D(A) = D(\Delta_D) \times Y \)

on \( E \). It is skewadjoint and thus generates a unitary \( C_0 \)-group \( T(\cdot) \).

We further let \( b \in L^\infty(G) \) and introduce the bounded operator \( B = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & b \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \) on \( X \). Corollary 3.5 now yields that \( A + B \) with \( D(A+B) = D(A) \) is the generator of a \( C_0 \)-group \( S(\cdot) \) on \( E \) which is bounded by \( e^{\|b\|_\infty t} \).

Let \( (u_0, u_1) \in D(A) \). Following Example 2.4, we can show that \( (u, u') = S(\cdot)(u_0, u_1) \) yields the unique solution \( u \in C^2(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, L^2(G)) \cap C^1(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, Y) \) \( \cap C(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, D(\Delta_D)) \) of the perturbed wave equation

\[ u''(t) = \Delta_D u(t) + bu'(t), \quad t \geq 0, \quad u(0) = u_0, \quad u'(0) = u_1. \] (3.8)

The term \( bu' \) acts as a damping if \( b \leq 0 \), and as an excitation if \( b \geq 0 \).

As in Example 2.17 we also want to allow for data in \( E \). To determine the extrapolation space \( E_{-1}^{A+B} \) for \( A + B \), we fix some \( \lambda > 3\|b\|_\infty \). Lemma 3.3 then yields the bound \( \|R(\lambda, A+B)w\|_E \leq \frac{3}{2} \|R(\lambda, A)w\|_E \). On the other hand, from the Hille–Yosida estimate (1.16) we obtain \( \|BR(\lambda, A+B)w\| \leq \|b\|_\infty/\lambda - \|b\|_\infty \leq \frac{1}{2} \). Writing \( R(\lambda, A) = R(\lambda, A + B - B) \), Lemma 3.3 also leads to the inequality \( \|R(\lambda, A)w\|_E \leq 2\|R(\lambda, A+B)w\|_E \). These expressions thus define equivalent norms on \( E \), which are also equivalent to \( w \mapsto A^{-1}w \|_E \) by (2.11).

From Example 2.17 we now infer that \( E_{-1}^{A+B} \) is isomorphic to \( F = L^2(G) \times W^{-1,2}(G) \cong E_{-1}^A \) where the isomorphisms extend the identity on \( E \). Moreover, by approximation we obtain

\[ (A+B)_{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & I \\ \Delta_D & 0 \end{pmatrix} : E \to F \cong E_{-1}^{A+B} \]
for the extension $\Delta_D : Y = W^{1,2}_0(G) \to W^{-1,2}(G)$ from Example 1.52.

Let $(u_0, u_1) \in E$. As in Example 2.4 and Example 2.17, we finally obtain a unique solution $u$ of (3.8) with $\Delta_D : Y \to W^{-1,2}(G)$ in $C^2(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, W^{-1,2}(G)) \cap C^1(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, L^2(G)) \cap C(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, Y)$. \hfill $\Box$

We now turn our attention to unbounded perturbations $B$ of a generator $A$. As noted above, we should impose a smallness assumption on $B$. We restrict ourselves to two very useful theorems for contraction and analytic semigroups, employing the simpler characterizations of the generation properties available here.\footnote{In Section III.3 of [EN] one can find results for general generators $A$ based on the fixed point equation (3.5) for $S(\cdot)$.}

**Theorem 3.8.** Let $A$ generate the contraction semigroup $T(\cdot)$ and $B$ be dissipative. Assume that $B$ is $A$-bounded with a constant $a < 1$ in (3.1). Then $A + B$ with $D(A + B) = D(A)$ generates a contraction semigroup $S(\cdot)$ which also satisfies formulas (3.5) and (3.6) for all $x \in D(A)$. The graph norms of $A$ and $A + B$ on $D(A)$ are equivalent.

**Proof.** 1) Observe that $A + B$ is densely defined and that we have $\text{Re} \langle Ax, x^* \rangle \leq 0$ for all $x \in D(A)$ and $x^* \in J(x)$ due to Proposition 1.33. Since $B$ is dissipative, for each $x \in D(A)$ there is a functional $y^* \in J(x)$ such that $\text{Re} \langle Bx, y^* \rangle \leq 0$. Hence, $\text{Re} \langle Ax + Bx, y^* \rangle \leq 0$ and $A + B$ is dissipative. By the assumption there are constants $a \in [0, 1)$ and $b \geq 0$ with $\|Bx\| \leq a\|Ax\| + b\|x\|$ for all $x \in D(A)$. First, assume that $a < \frac{1}{2}$. Fix $\lambda_0 > \frac{b}{1 - 2a} \geq 0$. Inequality (3.3) and the Hille-Yosida estimate (1.16) yield

$$\|BR(\lambda_0, A)\| \leq a\lambda_0\|R(\lambda_0, A)\| + a + b\|R(\lambda_0, A)\| \leq a + a + b\lambda_0^{-1} < 1.$$ 

Lemma 3.3 now implies that $A + B$ is closed, its graph norm is equivalent to $\| \cdot \|_A$, and $\lambda_0 \in \rho(A + B)$. The sum $A + B$ thus generates a contraction semigroup by the Lumer-Phillips Theorem 1.40.

2) Let $a \in \left[\frac{1}{2}, 1\right)$. We take $k \in \mathbb{N}$ with $k > \frac{2a}{1 - 2a}$. Then $\frac{1}{k}B$ is dissipative and $A$-bounded with a constant $a' = \frac{a}{k} \in \left(0, \frac{1}{2}\right].$ Step 1) yields that $C_1 := A + \frac{1}{k}B$ generates a contraction semigroup and that $\| \cdot \|_A \cong \| \cdot \|_{C_1}$. We inductively assume that $C_j := A + \frac{1}{k}B$ is a generator of a contraction semigroup and that $\| \cdot \|_A \cong \| \cdot \|_{C_j}$ for some $j \in \{1, \ldots, k - 1\}$. It follows

$$\|By\| \leq a\|Ay\| + b\|y\| \leq a\|C_jy\| + \frac{aj}{k}\|By\| + b\|y\|,$$

$$(1 - a)\|By\| \leq \left(1 - \frac{aj}{k}\right)\|By\| \leq a\|C_jy\| + b\|y\|,$$

$$\left|\frac{1}{k}By\right| \leq \frac{a}{k(1 - a)}\|C_jy\| + \frac{b}{k(1 - a)}\|y\|$$

for all $y \in D(A)$. Since $\tilde{a} := \frac{a}{k(1 - a)} < \frac{1}{2}$, by step 1) the sum $C_{j+1} := A + \frac{1}{k}B$ generates a contraction semigroup and its graph norm is equivalent to $\| \cdot \|_{C_j}$, and thus to $\| \cdot \|_A$ by the induction hypothesis. By iteration, $C_k = A + B$ is a generator of a contraction semigroup and $\| \cdot \|_A \cong \| \cdot \|_{A + B}$. The last assertion
can be shown as in Theorem 3.4. But note that it is not clear that (3.5) and (3.6) hold for all \( x \in X \) by approximation since \( B \) may be unbounded.  \( \square \)

If \( X \) is reflexive and one has \( a = 1 \) in the above theorem, the closure of \( A + B \) generates a contraction semigroup by Corollary III.2.9 in \([\text{EN}]\).

We now use Theorem 3.8 to solve the Schrödinger equation for the Coulomb potential, see also Example 4.19 in \([\text{ST}]\).

**Example 3.9.** Let \( E = L^2(\mathbb{R}^3) \) and \( A = i\Delta \) with \( \text{D}(A) = W^{2,2}(\mathbb{R}^3) \). Example 1.46 implies that \( A \) is skewadjoint, and so it generates a unitary \( C_0 \)-group \( T(\cdot) \) by Stone’s Theorem 1.45. We further set \( Bv(x) = \text{ib}|x|^{-1}v(x) =: -iV(x)v(x) \) for some \( b \in \mathbb{R} \), where \( V(0) := 0 \).

So we use Theorem 3.17 in \([\text{ST}]\) yields the embedding \( W^{2,2}(\mathbb{R}^3) \hookrightarrow C_0(\mathbb{R}^3) \). Let \( \varepsilon > 0 \) and \( v \in W^{2,2}(\mathbb{R}^3) \). Using also polar coordinates, we then estimate

\[
\|Bv\|_2^2 = b^2 \int_{B(0,\varepsilon)} \frac{|v(x)|^2}{|x|^2} \, dx + b^2 \int_{\mathbb{R}^3 \setminus B(0,\varepsilon)} \frac{|v(x)|^2}{|x|^2} \, dx
\]

\[
\leq 4\pi b^2 \int_0^\varepsilon \frac{|v|_{L^\infty}^2}{r^2} r^2 \, dr + \frac{b}{\varepsilon^2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^3 \setminus B(0,\varepsilon)} |v(x)|^2 \, dx
\]

\[
\leq 4\pi b^2 \|v\|_2^2 + b^2 \varepsilon^{-2} \|v\|_2^2.
\]

Since the graph norm of \( A \) is equivalent to \( \| \cdot \|_2^2 \) by Example 1.46, we conclude that \( B \) has the \( A \)-bound 0. Further, \( \pm B \) is dissipative since

\[
\text{Re}(Bv, v) = \text{Re} \text{ib} \int \frac{|v(x)|^2}{|x|^2} \, dx = 0.
\]

Theorem 3.8 thus says that \( A + B \) and \( -(A + B) \) generate a contraction semigroup. In view of Corollary 1.44, these semigroups yield an isometric group \( S(\cdot) \) which is unitary by Proposition 5.52 of \([\text{FA}]\). The function \( u = S(\cdot)u_0 \) then solves the Schrödinger equation

\[
u'(t) = i\Delta u(t) + \frac{ib}{|x|^2} u(t), \quad t \in \mathbb{R}, \quad (\iff) \quad iu'(t) = -(\Delta - V)u(t),
\]

\[
u(0) = u_0.
\]

Let \( \|u_0\|_2 = 1 \) so that \( \|u(t)\|_2 = 1 \). For a suitable constant \( b > 0 \) and appropriate units, then the integral \( \int_G |u(t, x)|^2 \, dx \) is the probability that the electron in the hydrogen atom belongs to the (Borel) set \( G \subseteq \mathbb{R}^3 \) at time \( t \in \mathbb{R} \).  \( \diamond \)

We now come to the core sectorial perturbation theorem. We note that in the result we keep the angle \( \phi \) from Definition 2.18, but increase the shift \( \omega \).  \(^3\)

**Theorem 3.10.** Let \( A \) be closed. Assume there are constants \( \omega \geq 0, K > 0 \) and \( \phi \in (0, \pi) \) such that \( \omega + \Sigma_\phi \leq \rho(A) \) and

\[\forall \lambda \in \Sigma_\phi : \quad \| R(\lambda + \omega, A) \| \leq \frac{K}{|\lambda|^\phi}. \]

Let \( B \) be \( A \)-bounded with constant \( a \in \left[0, \frac{1}{K+1}\right] \) in (3.1). Then there is a number \( \overline{\omega} \geq 0 \) such that \( A + B - \overline{\omega}I \) is sectorial of type \((K', \phi)\) for some \( K' > K \), and we have \([\text{D}(A + B)] = [\text{D}(A)] \) with equivalent norms.

\(^3\)In the lectures a slightly weaker version of the theorem was presented.
Let $\phi > \pi/2$ and $D(A)$ be dense. Then the sum $A + B$ generates an analytic $C_0$-semigroup, which also satisfies formulas (3.5) and (3.6) for all $x \in D(A)$.

**Proof.** Let $a \geq 0$ and $b > 0$ as in (3.1). Take $q \in (a(K + 1), 1)$ and set $r := \frac{K(a + b)}{q - a(K + 1)} > 0$. Let $\lambda \in \Sigma_\phi \setminus B(0, r)$ and $x \in X$. Using (3.1), the assumption and $|\lambda| \geq r$, we estimate

$$
\|BR(\lambda, A - \omega I)x\| \leq a\|AR(\lambda + \omega, A)x\| + b\|R(\lambda + \omega, A)x\|
$$

$$
\leq a\|\lambda + \omega\|R(\lambda + \omega, A)x\| + a\|x\| + \frac{bK}{|\lambda|}\|x\|
$$

$$
\leq a\left(\frac{K(|\lambda| + \omega)}{|\lambda|} + 1\right)\|x\| + \frac{bK}{|\lambda|}\|x\|
$$

$$
\leq a(K + 1)\|x\| + (q - a(K + 1))\|x\| = q\|x\|.
$$

Lemma 3.3 thus implies that $\lambda \in \rho(A + B - \omega I)$, $\|\cdot\|_{A+B} \cong \|\cdot\|_A$, and

$$
\|R(\lambda, A + B - \omega I)\| \leq \frac{\|R(\lambda + \omega, A)\|}{1 - q} \leq \frac{K/(1 - q)}{|\lambda|}
$$

for all $\lambda \in \Sigma_\phi \setminus B(0, r)$. Taking $\gamma = r$ if $\phi \leq \pi/2$ and $\gamma = r/\sin \phi > r$ if $\phi > \pi/2$, we obtain the inclusion $\gamma + \Sigma_\phi \subset \Sigma_\phi \setminus B(0, r)$ and the inequality

$$
\|R(\mu, A + B - (\omega + \gamma)I)\| = \|R(\mu + \gamma, A + B - \omega I)\| \leq \frac{K/(1 - q)}{|\mu + \gamma|} \leq \frac{K'}{|\mu|}
$$

for all $\mu \in \Sigma_\phi$, with $K' = \frac{K}{1 - q}$ if $\phi \leq \pi/2$ and $K' = \frac{K}{(1 - q)\sin \phi}$ if $\phi > \pi/2$. Here we use that $|1 + \gamma\mu^{-1}|$ is larger than the distance between $-1$ and $\Sigma_\phi$ which is $1$, resp. $\sin \phi$. Setting $\omega = \gamma + \omega$, we arrive at the first assertion. The second one follows from Theorem 2.25 and Remark 2.26, and the proof of Theorem 3.4. □

The following example contains several important techniques which often occur in applications to partial differential equations. It says that first-order perturbations $B$ have the $\Delta_D$-bound $0$ if the coefficients are not too bad.

**Example 3.11.** Let $G \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$ be bounded and open with a $C^2$-boundary, $p \in (1, \infty)$, $E = L^p(G)$, $A = \Delta_D$ with $D(A) = W^{2,p}(G) \cap W^{1,p}_0(G)$. By Example 2.29, the operator $A$ is sectorial with angle $\varphi > \pi/2$ and its graph norm is equivalent to $\|\cdot\|_{2,p}$. Theorem 3.26 of [ST] yields the Sobolev embedding $W^{2,p}(G) \hookrightarrow W^{1,\varphi_1}(G) \cap L^{\varphi_0}(G)$ for any $q_k \in (p, \infty)$ if $p = m/(2 - k)$ and

$$
q_k := \begin{cases} 
\infty, & p > \frac{m}{2 - k} , \\
\frac{mp}{m - (2-k)p}, & p < \frac{m}{2 - k} ,
\end{cases}
$$

where $k \in \{0, 1\}$. (One has $W^{2,p}(G) \hookrightarrow W^{k,q}(G)$ if $q > p$, $2 - \frac{m}{p} \notin \mathbb{Z}$, and $2 - \frac{m}{p} \geq k - \frac{m}{q}$.) Note that $q_k > p$. We take a number $\theta \in (0, 1)$ close to $1$ and introduce the exponents $\tilde{q}_k \in (p, q_k)$ and $r_k \in (p, \infty)$ by

$$
\frac{1}{\tilde{q}_k} = \frac{1 - \theta}{p} + \frac{\theta}{q_k} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{1}{r_k} = \frac{1}{p} - \frac{1}{\tilde{q}_k} ,
$$

for all $k \in \{0, 1\}$. (One has $W^{2,p}(G) \hookrightarrow W^{k,q}(G)$ if $q > p$, $2 - \frac{m}{p} \notin \mathbb{Z}$, and $2 - \frac{m}{p} \geq k - \frac{m}{q}$.) Note that $q_k > p$. We take a number $\theta \in (0, 1)$ close to $1$ and introduce the exponents $\tilde{q}_k \in (p, q_k)$ and $r_k \in (p, \infty)$ by

$$
\frac{1}{\tilde{q}_k} = \frac{1 - \theta}{p} + \frac{\theta}{q_k} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{1}{r_k} = \frac{1}{p} - \frac{1}{\tilde{q}_k} .
$$
Let \( v \in W^{2,p}(G) \). For given coefficients \( b \in L^{r_1}(G)^m \) and \( b_0 \in L^{r_0}(G) \), the operator \( B \) is defined by

\[
Bv = b \cdot \nabla v + b_0v = b_0v + \sum_{j=1}^{m} b_j \partial_j v.
\]

Using the above definitions and twice Hölder’s inequality, we first derive

\[
\|Bv\|_p \leq \|b\|_{r_1} \|\nabla v\|_{\tilde{r}_1} + \|b_0\|_{r_0} \|v\|_{\tilde{r}_0} \\
\leq \|b\|_{r_1} \|v\|^{1-\theta}_{1,p} \|v\|_{2,p}^{\theta} + \|b_0\|_{r_0} \|v\|_{2,p}^{1-\theta} \|v\|_{1,p}^{\theta}.
\]

Proposition 3.31 of \([ST]\) yields constants \( c, \varepsilon_0 > 0 \) such that

\[
\|v\|_{1,p} \leq \varepsilon \|v\|_{2,p} + c \varepsilon^{-1} \|v\|_p
\]

for all \( \varepsilon \in (0, \varepsilon_0] \). Sobolev’s embedding, the equivalence of \( \| \cdot \|_A \) and \( \| \cdot \|_{2,p} \), and the elementary Young inequality then imply

\[
\|Bv\|_p \leq c(b) \left( \varepsilon^{1-\theta} \|v\|_{2,p}^{1-\theta} \|v\|_{2,p}^{\theta} + \varepsilon^{-1} \|v\|_{1,p}^{1-\theta} \|v\|_{2,p}^{\theta} \right) + \varepsilon^{-1} \|v\|_{1,p}^{1-\theta} \|v\|_{2,p}
\]

\[
\leq c(b) \left( \varepsilon^{1-\theta} \|v\|_{2,A} + 2(1-\theta) \varepsilon^{1-\theta} \|v\|_{2,p} + \theta \varepsilon \|v\|_{2,A} + \theta \varepsilon \|v\|_{2,A} \right)
\]

for constants \( c(b), \hat{c}(b) > 0 \) depending on \( \|b\|_{r_1} \) and \( \|b_0\|_{r_0} \). The operator \( B : D(A) \to L^p(G) \) thus has \( A \)-bound 0. Theorem 3.10 now shows that \( A + B \) with domain \( D(A) \) generates an analytic semigroup on \( L^p(G) \).

\[\Box\]

### 3.2. The Trotter-Kato theorems

In applications one often knows the parameters in a problem only approximately since the rely on measurements. As in the case of initial values one can then argue that the solution should depend continuously on the parameters. In other words, let \( A_n \) and \( A \) generate \( C_0 \)-semigroups \( T_n(\cdot) \) and \( T(\cdot) \) for \( n \in \mathbb{N} \). Assume that \( 'A_n \to A' \) as \( n \to \infty \) in some sense. Do we obtain \( 'T_n(t) \to T(t)' \)?

This question also occurs if one wants to regularize a problem in order to ‘legalize’ certain calculations, and also in numerical analysis where the operators \( A_n \) are matrices on subspaces of finite dimensions \( m_n \to \infty \) (if \( \dim X = \infty \)).

In the easiest case one has \( D(A_n) = D(A) \) and each difference \( A_n - A \) has a bounded extension \( B_n \) tending to 0 in operator norm as \( n \to \infty \). (For instance, take \( A = \Delta_D + V \) and \( A_n = \Delta_D + V_n \) on \( L^2(G) \) with \( V_n \to V \) in \( L^\infty(G) \).) We have \( c := \sup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \|B_n\| < \infty \) and \( \|T(t)\| \leq M e^{ct} \) for all \( t \geq 0 \) and some constants \( M \geq 0 \) and \( \omega \in \mathbb{R} \). Duhamel’s formula \((3.5)\) and estimate \((3.4)\) yield

\[
\|T_n(t)x - T(t)x\| = \left\| \int_{0}^{t} T(t-s)B_n T_n(s)x \ ds \right\| \\
\leq M^2 \|B_n\| \int_{0}^{t} e^{c(t-s)} e^{(\omega+cM)s} \|x\| \|x\| \leq c(t_0) \|B_n\| \|x\|
\]

for all \( x \in X, t \in [0,t_0], t_0 > 0, \) and a constant depending on \( t_0 \). This means that \( T_n(t) \) tends to \( T(t) \) in \( \mathcal{B}(X) \) locally uniformly in \( t \) if \( \|A_n - A\| \to 0, n \to \infty \).

We give a typical example for which the question cannot be settled just by the bounded perturbation Theorem 3.4.
Example 3.12. Let $G \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$ be open and bounded with a $C^1$-boundary, $E = L^2(G)$, $\Delta_D$ is the Dirichlet–Laplacian in $E$ from Example 1.52, and $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$. Recall that $\Delta_D$ is invertible and generates contraction semigroup. Let $a_n \in L^\infty(G)$ satisfy $\frac{1}{2} \geq a_n(x) \geq \delta > 0$ and $a_n(x) \rightarrow a_0(x)$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$ for a.e. $x \in G$ and a constant $\delta \in (0, 1]$.

We define $A_n = a_n \Delta_D$ on $D(A_n) = D(\Delta_D)$ and note that this domain is dense in $E$. To treat $A_n$, we use the weighted scalar products

$$(f|g)_n = \int_G \frac{1}{a_n} f g \, dx$$

for $f, g \in E$. The induced norm satisfies $\delta \|f\|_{L^2}^2 \leq \|f\|_n^2 \leq \delta^{-1} \|f\|_{L^2}^2$. For $v \in D(A_n)$ we obtain

$$(A_n v|v)_n = \int_G \frac{a_n}{a_n} \Delta_D v \overline{v} \, dx = (\Delta_D v|v)_{L^2} \leq 0,$$

so that $A_n$ is dissipative with respect to $\| \cdot \|_n$. The same arguments work for the operators $e^{i \theta A_n}$ and all $\theta \in (0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ To check the range condition, take $f \in E$ and $v \in D(\Delta_D)$. Since $a_n \Delta_D v = f$ is equivalent to $v = \Delta_D^{-1}(a_n^{-1} f)$, the operator $A_n$ is invertible in $E$ and hence in $(E, \| \cdot \|_n)$. As $\rho(A_n)$ is open, also $\lambda_0 I - A_n$ is invertible for small $\lambda_0 > 0$. By Corollary 2.27, each $A_n$ generates an analytic $C_0$-semigroup $T_n(\cdot)$ which is contractive for $z \in \mathbb{C}_+$ with respect to $\| \cdot \|_n$. For $z \in \mathbb{C}_+$, $f \in E$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$, we then obtain the uniform bound

$$\|T_n(z)f\|_{L^2} \leq \delta^{-1/2} \|T_n(z)f\|_n \leq \delta^{-1/2} \|f\|_n \leq \delta^{-1} \|f\|_{L^2}.$$  

Observe that $A_n v$ tends to $A_0 v$ pointwise a.e. as $n \rightarrow \infty$ and moreover $|A_n v| \leq \delta^{-1} |\Delta v|$. Dominated convergence then yields the limit $A_n v \rightarrow A_0 v$ in $E$ for each $v \in D(\Delta_D)$. Does $T_n(T)$ tends to $T_0(t)$ strongly?  

The next example indicates that one needs a uniform bound on the semigroups $T_n(\cdot)$ to obtain a general result.

Example 3.13. Let $X = \ell^2$, $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $A((x_k)_k) = (ik x_k)_k$ with $D(A) = \{x \in \ell^2 : (k x_k)_k \in \ell^2 \}$ and $A_n((x_k)_k) = (ik x_k + \delta_{k,n} k x_k)_k$ with $D(A_n) = D(A)$ for the Kronecker delta $\delta_{k,n}$. As in the exercises, one sees that the multiplication operators $A$ and $A_n$ generate the $C_0$-semigroup on $X$ given by $T(t)x = (e^{ikt} x_k)_k$ and $T_n(t)x = (e^{ikt} e^{\delta_{k,n} t} x_k)_k$, respectively. For $x \in D(A)$ the distance $\|A_n x - Ax\|_2 = |nx_n| = |(A_n x)|$ tends to 0 as $n \rightarrow \infty$; i.e., $A_n$ converges on the common domain strongly to $A$. On the other hand, we have

$$\|T_n(t)\| \geq \|T_n(t)e_n\|_2 = |e^{int}e^{nt}| = e^{nt} \rightarrow \infty$$

as $n \rightarrow \infty$ for all $t > 0$. So $T_n(t)$ cannot converge strongly, since strong convergence would imply uniform boundedness of $\{T_n(t) \mid n \in \mathbb{N} \}$.  

The first Trotter–Kato theorem from 1958/59 shows that the convergence of resolvents and semigroups are equivalent and that it follows from the convergence of the generators, provided that the $C_0$-semigroups $T_n(\cdot)$ are exponentially bounded uniformly in $n$.
THEOREM 3.14. Let $A_n$ and $A$ generate $C_0$-semigroups $T_n(\cdot)$ and $T(\cdot)$, respectively, which satisfy $\|T_n(t)\|, \|T(t)\| \leq Me^{\omega t}$ for all $t \geq 0$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and some $M \geq 1$ and $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$. Let $D$ be a core of $D(A)$. Then the implications a) $\Rightarrow$ b) $\Leftrightarrow$ c) $\Rightarrow$ d) hold among the following claims, where we always let $n \to \infty$.

a) $D \subseteq D(A_n)$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $A_n y \to Ay$ for all $y \in D$.

b) For all $y \in D$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$ there are $y_n \in D(A_n)$ with $y_n \to y$ and $A_n y_n \to Ay$.

c) For some $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}_\omega$, we have $R(\lambda, A_n)x \to R(\lambda, A)x$ for all $x \in X$.

d) For each $t \geq 0$ we have $T_n(t)x \to T(t)x$ for all $x \in X$.

If c) or d) are true, then c) is valid for all $\lambda \in \omega + \mathbb{C}_+ = \mathbb{C}_\omega$ and the limit in d) is uniform on all compact subsets of $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$.

PROOF. The implication from a) to b) is trivial (take $y_n = y$). Let statement b) be true. Take any $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}_\omega$. Since $M - A : [D(A)] \to X$ is an isomorphism, the set $(M - A)D$ is dense in $X$. The Hille–Yosida estimate (1.14) and the assumption yield the uniform bound $\|R(\lambda, A_n)\| \leq \frac{M}{\Re \lambda - \omega}$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. By Lemma 4.10 of [FA] we thus have to show property c) only for all $x = \lambda y - Ay$ with $y \in D$. Let $y \in D$. Due to condition b), there are vectors $y_n \in D(A_n)$ such that $y_n \to y$ and $A_n y_n \to Ay$ in $X$ as $n \to \infty$. These limits imply $x_n := \lambda y_n - A_n y_n \to x = \lambda y - Ay$ as $n \to \infty$. Estimating

$$\|R(\lambda, A_n)x - R(\lambda, A)x\| \leq \|R(\lambda, A_n)(x - x_n)\| + \|R(\lambda, A_n)x_n - R(\lambda, A)x\|$$

$$\leq \frac{M}{\Re \lambda - \omega}\|x - x_n\| + \|y_n - y\| \to 0, \quad n \to \infty,$$

we conclude assertion c) for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}_\omega$.

Next, let property c) be valid for some $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}_\omega$. Let $y \in D$. We set $x = \lambda y - Ay$ and $y_n = R(\lambda, A_n)x \in D(A_n)$. It follows that $y_n \to y$ and $A_n y_n = \lambda R(\lambda, A_n)x - x \to \lambda R(\lambda, A)x - x = \lambda y - x = Ay$ as $n \to \infty$; i.e., claim b) holds.

We assume condition d). Take $x \in X$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}_\omega$. Proposition 1.21 yields

$$\|R(\lambda, A)x - R(\lambda, A_n)x\| \leq \int_0^\infty \|e^{-\Re M(t)}(T(t)x - T_n(t)x)\| \, dt.$$ 

The integrand is bounded by $2M \|x\|e^{(\omega - \Re \lambda) t}$ and tends to 0 for each $t \geq 0$ as $n \to \infty$. Part c) now results from dominated convergence, for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}_\omega$.

Finally, let again c) be true for some $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}_\omega$. Take $x \in X$, $t_0 > 0$, $t \in [0, t_0]$, and $\varepsilon > 0$. Since $D(A)$ is dense, there is a vector $y \in D(A)$ with $\|x - y\| \leq \varepsilon$. Set $z = \lambda y - Ay \in X$. We then compute

$$\|T_n(t)x - T(t)x\| \leq \|T_n(t)\| \|x - y\| + \|T_n(t)y - T(t)y\| + \|T(t)\| \|y - x\|$$

$$\leq 2Me^{\omega t} \varepsilon + \|(T_n(t) - T(t))R(\lambda, A)z\|.$$ 

Commuting resolvents and semigroups, the last term is split in three terms

$$\|(T_n(t) - T(t))R(\lambda, A)z\| \leq \|T_n(t)(R(\lambda, A)z - R(\lambda, A_n)z)\|$$

$$+ \|R(\lambda, A_n)(T_n(t)z - T(t)z)\|$$

...
Because of (c), the summand \( d_{1,n}(t) \leq M e^{\omega t_0} \| R(\lambda, A) z - R(\lambda, A_n) z \| \) tends to 0 uniformly for \( t \in [0, t_0] \) as \( n \to \infty \). Since the set \( \{ T(t)y \mid t \in [0, t_0] \} \) is compact, the same holds for \( d_{3,n} \) by an exercise in Functional Analysis.

It remains to show this convergence for \( d_{2,n} \). As above we find an element \( w \in X \) satisfying \( \| z - R(\lambda, A) w \| \leq \varepsilon \). Inserting \( v = R(\lambda, A) w \), we compute

\[
d_{2,n}(t) \leq \| R(\lambda, A_n)(T_n(t) - T(t))(z - R(\lambda, A) w) \| + \| R(\lambda, A_n)(T_n(t) - T(t)) v \|
\]

\[
\leq \frac{M}{\text{Re} \lambda - \omega} 2 M e^{\omega t_0} \varepsilon + \| (T_n(t)R(\lambda, A_n) - R(\lambda, A_n)T(t))R(\lambda, A)w \|.
\]

We denote the last summand by \( \hat{d}_{2,n}(t) \). To dominate also this term, we write

\[
\hat{d}_{2,n}(t) = \left\| - \int_0^t \partial_n[T_n(t-s)R(\lambda, A_n)T(s)R(\lambda, A) w] \, ds \right\|
\]

\[
= \left\| \int_0^t (T_n(t-s)A_nR(\lambda, A_n)T(s)R(\lambda, A) w
\]

\[
- T_n(t-s)R(\lambda, A_n)T(s)AR(\lambda, A) w) \, ds \right\|
\]

\[
= \left\| \int_0^t T_n(t-s)[R(\lambda, A_n) - R(\lambda, A)]T(s)w \, ds \right\|
\]

\[
\leq M e^{\omega t_0} t_0 \sup_{s \in [0, t_0]} \| [R(\lambda, A_n) - R(\lambda, A)]T(s)w \|.
\]

The right-hand side converges to 0 uniformly for \( t \in [0, t_0] \) as \( n \to \infty \), again due to (c) and the compactness of \( \{ T(s)w \mid s \in [0, t_0] \} \). Combining these estimates, we derive assertion (d) with local uniform convergence. \( \square \)

Example 3.15. In the setting of Example 3.13, the above theorem implies that the semigroup generated by \( A_n = a_n \Delta_D \) converges strongly on \( L^2(G) \) to the \( C_0 \)-semigroup generated by \( A = a \Delta_D \). Here we have \( D(\Delta_D) = D = D(A) = D(A_n) \), \( \omega = 0 \), and \( M = \delta^{-1} \). \( \diamond \)

In Theorem 3.14 we have assumed that the limit operator \( A \) is a generator. We want to replace this assumption by a range condition as in the Lumer–Phillips theorem. In the main step of our argument we start with strongly converging resolvents and have to show that the limit operators form again the resolvent of a map (which then turns out to be a generator thanks to the Hille-Yosida theorem). In this step we employ the next concept.

Definition 3.16. Let \( \emptyset \neq \Lambda \subseteq \mathbb{C} \). A set \( \{ R(\lambda) \mid \lambda \in \Lambda \} \) in \( B(X) \) is called pseudo-resolvent if it satisfies

\[
R(\lambda) - R(\mu) = (\mu - \lambda) R(\lambda) R(\mu) \quad \text{for all } \lambda, \mu \in \Lambda.
\] (3.9)

We first show that pseudo-resolvents occur as strong limits of resolvents, which only have to converge for one point \( \lambda_0 \).

Lemma 3.17. Let \( R(\lambda, A_n) \) be resolvents satisfying \( \| R(\lambda, A_n) \| \leq \frac{M}{\text{Re} \lambda - \omega} \) for all \( n \in \mathbb{N} \) and \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C}_\omega \) and some \( \omega \in \mathbb{R} \) and \( M > 0 \). If \( R(\lambda_0, A_n) \) strongly tends
to an operator $R(\lambda_0)$ in $\mathcal{B}(X)$ for some $\lambda_0 \in \mathbb{C}_\omega$, then all operators $R(\lambda, A_n)$ strongly converge to a pseudo-resolvent $\{R(\lambda) \mid \lambda \in \mathbb{C}_\omega\}$ for $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}_\omega$ as $n \to \infty$.

**Proof.** We show the strong convergence for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}_\omega$ below. Then the resolvent equation (1.7) for $R(\lambda, A_n)$ implies (3.9) in the strong limit. Let $\mu \in \mathbb{C}_\omega$. Remark 1.17 yields the expansion

$$R(\lambda, A_n) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (\mu - \lambda)^k R(\mu, A_n)^{k+1}$$

for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}_\omega$ with $|\mu - \lambda| \leq \frac{|\text{Re}\mu - \omega|}{2M} \leq \frac{1}{2} \|R(\mu, A_n)\|^{-1}$. If $R(\mu, A_n)$ converges strongly as $n \to \infty$, then also the partial sums of the above series have strong limits. The norms of the remainder terms

$$\sum_{k=K+1}^{\infty} (\mu - \lambda)^k R(\mu, A_n)^{k+1}$$

are bounded by $c \sum_{k=K+1}^{\infty} 2^{-k} = 2^{-K} e^c$ with $c = M/(\text{Re}\mu - \omega)$, which tends to 0 as $K \to \infty$ independently of $n$. As a result, the operator $R(\lambda, A_n)$ converges strongly as $n \to \infty$ for $\lambda \in B(\mu, \frac{1}{2\pi}(\text{Re}\mu - \omega))$. The radii of these balls are greater than a number $r(\delta) > 0$ for all $\mu \in \mathbb{C}_{\omega+\delta}$ and each $\delta > 0$. Starting from $\lambda_0$ and $\delta \in (0, \text{Re}\lambda_0 - \omega)$, for each $\mu \in \mathbb{C}_{\omega+\delta}$ we can thus show the strong convergence of $(R(\mu, A_n))_n$ by a finite iteration. The result follows since $\delta > 0$ is arbitrary.

We note that in Lemma 3.17 the limits $R(\lambda)$ do not need to form a resolvent. For instance, the bounded generators $A_n = -nI$ satisfy $\|e^{tA_n}\| = e^{-nt} \leq 1$ for all $t \geq 0$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and their resolvent $R(\lambda, A_n) = \frac{1}{\lambda + nI}$ tends to $0 = R(\lambda)$ as $n \to \infty$ for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}_\omega$. Before we deal with this problem, we derive important properties of pseudo-resolvents.

**Lemma 3.18.** For a pseudo-resolvent $\{R(\lambda) \mid \lambda \in \Lambda\}$ and all $\lambda, \mu \in \Lambda$, we have

a) $R(\lambda)R(\mu) = R(\mu)R(\lambda)$,

b) $N(R(\lambda)) = N(R(\mu))$,

c) $R(\lambda)X = R(\mu)X$.

**Proof.** Interchanging $\lambda$ and $\mu$, equation (3.9) implies assertion a). These facts further yield the formulas

$$R(\lambda) = R(\mu)(I + (\mu - \lambda)R(\lambda)) = (I + (\mu - \lambda)R(\lambda))R(\mu),$$

which lead to the inclusions $R(\lambda)X \subseteq R(\mu)X$ and $N(R(\mu)) \subseteq N(R(\lambda))$. The converse inclusions are shown analogously.

We now establish sufficient conditions for a pseudo-resolvent to be a resolvent.

**Lemma 3.19.** Let $\{R(\lambda) \mid \lambda \in \Lambda\}$ be a pseudo-resolvent.

a) Let $R(\lambda_0)$ be injective for some $\lambda_0 \in \Lambda$. Then there is a closed operator $A$ domain $D(A) = R(\lambda_0)X$ such that $\Lambda \subseteq \rho(A)$ and $R(\lambda) = R(\lambda, A)$ for all $\lambda \in \Lambda$. Hence, $A$ is densely defined if $R(\lambda_0)$ has dense range.

b) Let $R(\mu)$ have dense range for some $\mu \in \Lambda$ and let there be $\lambda_j \in \Lambda$ with $|\lambda_j| \to \infty$ as $j \to \infty$ such that $\|\lambda_j R(\lambda_j)\| \leq M$ for all $j \in \mathbb{N}$ and some constant $M > 0$. Then $R(\lambda)$ is injective for all $\lambda \in \Lambda$ (and thus a resolvent by part a)).
PROOF. a) The assumption allows us to define the closed operator $A = \lambda_0 I - R(\lambda_0)^{-1}$ with dense domain $D(A) = R(\lambda_0)X$. It satisfies the equations $(\lambda_0 I - A)R(\lambda_0) = R(\lambda_0)^{-1}R(\lambda_0) = I$, $R(\lambda_0)(\lambda_0 y - Ay) = R(\lambda_0)R(\lambda_0)^{-1}y = y$ for all $y \in D(A)$, so that $\lambda_0 \in \rho(A)$ and $R(\lambda_0) = R(\lambda_0, A)$. Lemma 3.18 shows that $R(\lambda)X = D(A)$ for all $\lambda \in \Lambda$. Using this fact and (3.9), we further compute

$$(\lambda I - A)R(\lambda) = [(\lambda - \lambda_0)I + (\lambda_0 I - A)]R(\lambda_0)[I - (\lambda - \lambda_0)R(\lambda)] = I + (\lambda - \lambda_0)(R(\lambda_0)[I - (\lambda - \lambda_0)R(\lambda)] - R(\lambda)) = I,$$

and similarly $R(\lambda)(\lambda y - Ay) = y$ for $y \in D(A)$. Assertion a) is thus proved.

b) We have $\lambda_j \neq \lambda$ for all sufficiently large $j \in \mathbb{N}$. Equation (3.9) and the assumptions then yield the limit

$$\|(\lambda_j R(\lambda_j) - I)R(\mu)\| = \left\| \frac{\lambda_j}{\mu - \lambda_j} (R(\lambda_j) - R(\mu)) - R(\mu) \right\| = \left\| \frac{\lambda_j}{\mu - \lambda_j} R(\lambda_j) - \frac{\mu}{\mu - \lambda_j} R(\mu) \right\| \leq \frac{M + \|\mu R(\mu)\|}{|\mu - \lambda_j|} \to 0$$

as $j \to \infty$. Since the set $R(\mu)X$ is dense and the operators $\lambda_j R(\lambda_j)$ are uniformly bounded, it follows that $\lambda_j R(\lambda_j)x \to x$ as $j \to \infty$ for all $x \in X$. Now, let $R(\lambda)x = 0$ for some $x \in X$ and $\lambda \in \Lambda$. From Lemma 3.18 deduce that $0 = \lambda_j R(\lambda_j)x \to x$ as $j \to \infty$ and hence $x = 0$. \qed

With these preparations we can now show the second Trotter–Kato theorem, which adds a generation result to the first one.

THEOREM 3.20. Let $A_n$ generate $C_0$-semigroups $T_n(\cdot)$ such that $\|T_n(t)\| \leq Me^{\omega t}$ for all $t \geq 0$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and some constants $M \geq 1$ and $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$. We then obtain the implications a) $\Rightarrow$ b) $\Leftrightarrow$ c) among the following statements.

a) There exists a densely defined operator $A_0$ such that $D(A_0) \subseteq D(A_n)$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $A_n y \to A_0 y$ as $n \to \infty$ for all $y \in D(A_0)$, and the range $(\lambda_0 I - A_0)D(A_0)$ is dense in $X$ for some $\lambda_0 \in \mathbb{C}_\omega$.

b) For some $\lambda_0 \in \mathbb{C}_\omega$ the operators $R(\lambda_0, A_n)$ converge strongly to a map $R \in \mathcal{B}(X)$ with dense range.

c) There is a $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ with generator $A$ such that $T_n(t)$ converges strongly to $T(t)$ for all $t \geq 0$ as $n \to \infty$.

If property b) is true, then $R = R(\lambda_0, A)$. If part a) holds, then $A = \overline{A_0}$. The semigroups $T_n(\cdot)$ and $T(\cdot)$ satisfy the assertions of Theorem 3.14 if we assume conditions a), b) or c).

PROOF. The implication ‘c) $\Rightarrow$ b)’ is a consequence of Theorem 3.14 with $R = R(\lambda_0, A)$ since $\|T(t)\| \leq Me^{\omega t}$ follows from the assumptions.

Let statement a) be true. Take any $y \in D(A_0)$ and set $x = \lambda_0 y - A_0 y$. Using the assumption and the Hille-Yosida estimate (1.14), we compute

$$\|R(\lambda_0, A_n)x - y\| = \|R(\lambda_0, A_n)((\lambda_0 y - A_0 y) - (\lambda_0 I - A_0)y)\|$$
as \( n \to \infty \). Since the range \((\lambda_0 I - A_0)D(A_0)\) is dense and \(R(\lambda_0, A_n)\) is uniformly bounded, the resolvents \(R(\lambda_0, A_n)\) thus converge strongly to a map \(R \in \mathcal{B}(X)\). The range of \(R\) contains the dense set \(D(A_0)\); so that claim b) is shown.

Assume condition b). Due to Lemma 3.17, the operators \(R(\lambda, A_n)\) converge strongly to a pseudo-resolvent \(\{R(\lambda) \mid \lambda \in \mathbb{C}_\omega\}\) as \( n \to \infty \), where \(R(\lambda_0) = R\) has dense range by b). Therefore also the terms \((\lambda - \omega)^k R(\lambda, A_n)^k\) tend to \((\lambda - \omega)^k R(\lambda)^k\) strongly for all \( k \in \mathbb{N} \) and all \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C}_\omega \) as \( n \to \infty \). By assumption, the resolvents satisfy the Hille–Yosida estimate (1.14) with uniform constants and hence the pseudo-resolvent inherits it. Lemma 3.19 now provides a closed operator \(A\) with dense domain \(R(\lambda_0)X\) such that \(R(\lambda) = R(\lambda, A)\). From the Hille–Yosida Theorem 1.27 we also infer that \(A\) generates a \(C_0\)-semigroup \(T(\cdot)\). Theorem 3.14 now yields statement c) and the last addendum.

Finally, we have to show that \(A_0\) has the closure \(A\) if property a) is true. Let \(y \in D(A_0)\). Assertions a) and b) yield

\[
y = \lim_{n \to -\infty} R(\lambda_0, A_n)(\lambda_0 y - A_n y) = R(\lambda_0, A)(\lambda_0 y - A_0 y),
\]

so that \(Ay = A_0y\) and \(A_0 \subseteq A\). Therefore, \(A_0\) possesses the closure \(\overline{A_0} \subseteq A\).

On the other hand, the range \((\lambda_0 I - A_0)D(A_0)\) is dense in \(X\) since it contains the set \((\lambda_0 I - A_0)D(A_0)\). Let \(y \in D(A_0)\). There exist vectors \(y_k \in D(A_0)\) such that \(y_k \to y\) and \(A_0 y_k \to \overline{A_0 y}\) in \(X\) as \(k \to \infty\). Above we have checked the equality \(y_k = R(\lambda_0, A)(\lambda_0 y_k - A_0 y_k)\) which tends to \(y = R(\lambda_0, A)(\lambda_0 y - \overline{A_0 y})\). Hence, \(\|y\|\) is bounded by a constant times \(\|\lambda_0 y - \overline{A_0 y}\|\). Proposition 1.19 of [ST] then implies that the range \((\lambda_0 I - \overline{A_0})D(\overline{A_0})\) is closed and so \(\lambda_0 I - \overline{A_0}\) is surjective. Because of \(\lambda_0 \in \rho(A)\), Lemma 1.24 yields the quality \(\overline{A_0} = A\).

### 3.3. Approximation formulas

Based on the Trotter–Kato theorems, we now discuss further approximation results for \(C_0\)-semigroups. We start with an auxiliary fact.

**Lemma 3.21.** Let \(S \in \mathcal{B}(X)\) satisfy \(\|S^n\| \leq M\) for all \(n \in \mathbb{N}\) and some \(M > 0\). We then obtain

\[
\|e^{n(S-I)x} - S^n x\| \leq M \sqrt{n}\|Sx - x\| \quad \text{for all } n \in \mathbb{N}, \ x \in X.
\]

**Proof.** For \(n, m, l \in \mathbb{N}\) with \(m > l\) and \(x \in X\), we compute

\[
e^{n(S-I)} - S^n = e^{-n} \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{n^j}{j!} S^j - \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{n^j}{j!} e^{-n} S^n = e^{-n} \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{n^j}{j!} (S^j - S^n),
\]

\[
\|S^m x - S^l x\| = \left\| \sum_{j=l}^{m-1} S^j (S-I)x \right\| \leq M(m-l)\|Sx - x\|.
\]

Calculating an elementary series, we then estimate

\[
\|e^{n(S-I)x} - S^n x\| \leq M e^{-n}\|Sx - x\| \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \sqrt{\frac{n}{j!}} \sqrt{\frac{n}{j!}} |n-j|
\]
3.20 Let by rescaling, we may assume that thus shows that

\[ 3.21 \]

\[ \text{Theorem} \]

\[ 3.22 \]

\[ \text{Proof.} \]

\[ \text{Consistency and stability imply convergence,} \]

which is a fundamental principle in numerical analysis. In this context one has to combine it with finite dimensional approximations, cf. Section 3.6 of [Pa]. In the exercises we treat convergence rates for vectors in suitable subspaces.

**Theorem 3.22.** Let \( V : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \to \mathcal{B}(X) \) be a function such that \( V(0) = I \) and \( \|V(t)\| \leq Me^{\omega t} \) for all \( t \geq 0 \) and \( k \in \mathbb{N} \) and some \( \omega \in \mathbb{R} \) and \( M \geq 1 \). Assume that the limit \( A_0y := \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{1}{t}(V(t)x - x) \) exists for all \( y \) in a dense subspace \( D(A_0) \). Let the range \( (\lambda I - A_0)D(A_0) \) be dense in \( X \) for some \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C}_\omega \). Then \( A_0 \) is closed and its closure \( A \) generates the \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( T(\cdot) \). The products \( V(t/n)^n \) strongly converge to \( T(t) \) locally uniformly in \( t \geq 0 \) as \( n \to \infty \).

**Proof.** By rescaling, we may assume that \( \omega = 0 \). For \( s > 0 \) we define the bounded operator \( A_s = \frac{1}{s}(V(s) - I) \) on \( X \). The assumption says that \( A_s y \to A_0 y \) for all \( y \in D(A_0) \) as \( s \to 0 \) and that

\[ \|e^{tA_s}\| = e^{\frac{t}{s}}\|e^{\frac{1}{s}V(s)}\| \leq e^{\frac{1}{s}} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^k}{s^k k!} \|V(s)^k\| \leq e^{\frac{1}{s}} e^{\frac{1}{s}M} = M \]

for all \( t \geq 0 \). Theorem 3.20 thus shows that \( A_0 \) has a closure \( A \) which generates the \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( T(\cdot) \) and for any null sequence \( (s_n) \) the operators \( e^{tA_{s_n}} \) strongly tend to \( T(t) \) as \( n \to \infty \), uniformly for \( t \in [0, t_0] \) and each \( t_0 > 0 \).

We claim that also \( e^{tA_{s_n}} \) strongly converges to \( T(t) \) locally uniformly in \( t \) as \( n \to \infty \). If the claim was wrong, there would exist a vector \( x \in X \) and times \( t_n \in [0, t_0] \) for some \( t_0 > 0 \) such that

\[ \inf_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \|e^{tA_{s_n}}x - T(t_n)x\| > 0. \]

Since \( s_n := t_n/n \to 0 \) as \( n \to \infty \), we obtain a contradiction.

Let \( x \in X, \varepsilon > 0, t_0 > 0 \), and \( t \in [0, t_0] \). Choose \( y \in D(A_0) \) with \( \|x - y\| \leq \varepsilon \).

**Lemma 3.21** then yields

\[ \|e^{tA_{s_n}/n}x - V(t/n)y\| \leq \|e^{tA_{s_n}/n}x - y\| + \|e^{n(V(t/n) - I)y - V(t/n)y} + V(t/n)y\| \leq 2M\varepsilon + M\sqrt{n}\|V(t/n)y\| \leq 2M\varepsilon + M\sqrt{n}\sup_{0 \leq s \leq t_0/n} \|A_s y\|. \]

The right hand side tends to \( 2M\varepsilon \) as \( n \to \infty \), so that \( V(t/n)^n = e^{tA_{s_n}} + V(t/n)^n - e^{tA_{s_n}} \) strongly converges to \( T(t) \) locally uniformly in \( t \). \( \square \)
We add two special cases of the above general approximation result. (More examples are discussed in the exercises.) The first one is the Lie-Trotter product formula, shown by Trotter 1959 in a more direct way. It is of great importance in numerical analysis for problems where one can compute approximations of $T(\cdot)$ and $S(\cdot)$ in an efficient way, cf. the exercises. Note that the assumptions after (3.10) are satisfied if we know that (a closure of) $C$ is a generator.

**Corollary 3.23.** Assume that $A$ and $B$ generate $C_0$-semigroups $T(\cdot)$ and $S(\cdot)$, respectively, subject to the stability bound

$$\| (T(\frac{1}{n}) S(\frac{1}{n}))^n \| \leq M e^{\omega t} \quad (3.10)$$

for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $t \geq 0$ and some $M \geq 1$ and $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$. Let $D := D(A) \cap D(B)$ and $(\lambda I - (A+B))D$ be dense in $X$ for some $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}_\omega$. Then the sum $C := A + B$ on $D(C) := D$ has a closure $\overline{C}$ which generates a $C_0$-semigroup $U(\cdot)$ given by

$$U(t)x = \lim_{n \to \infty} (T(\frac{1}{n}) S(\frac{1}{n}))^n x$$

uniformly on all compact subsets of $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ and for all $x \in X$.

**Proof.** Define $V(t) = T(t)S(t)$ for $t \geq 0$. For $x \in D$, the vectors

$$\frac{1}{t}(V(t)x - x) = T(t)\frac{1}{t}(S(t)x - x) + \frac{1}{t}(T(t)x - x)$$

converge to $Bx + Ax$ as $t \to 0^+$. The result now follows from Theorem 3.22.

The stability condition (3.10) holds if both semigroups are $\omega/2$-contractive. In general, one cannot find an equivalent norm for which both semigroups become quasi-contractive, cf. Remark 1.26. In fact, there are generators $A$ and $B$ such that $A + B$ exists and generates a $C_0$-semigroup, but (3.10) is violated, and thus the Lie-Trotter product formula fails, see [KW].

The Lie-Trotter formula can be used to give an alternative proof of the positivity assertion in Example 3.6. It also yields a rigorous mathematical interpretation for the ‘Feynman path integral formula’ in quantum mechanics for the Schrödinger group $e^{it(A-B)}$, see Paragraph 8.13 in [Go].

By Proposition 1.21, the resolvent of the generator is the Laplace transform

$$L(T(\cdot)x)(\lambda) = \int_0^\infty e^{-\lambda t} T(t)x \ dt = R(\lambda, A)x, \quad \text{Re}\ \lambda > \omega_0(A). \quad (3.11)$$

of the semigroup. In the next corollary we invert this transformation (for semigroup orbits) and thus approximate $T(t)$ by powers of the resolvent. In numerics the resulting formula is called ‘implicit Euler scheme.’ By these formulas one can often transfer properties from the resolvent to the semigroup and back, see e.g. Corollary 3.25. This is an important fact since the resolvent is closely related to the generator, which is usually the given object in applications. We use this link in Example 3.26.

**Corollary 3.24.** Let $A$ generate the $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$. We then have

$$T(t)x = \lim_{n \to \infty} \left( \frac{t}{n} R(\frac{n}{t}, A) \right)^n x = \lim_{n \to \infty} (I - \frac{t}{n}A)^{-n} x$$

uniformly on all compact subsets of $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ and for all $x \in X$. 

3.3. Approximation formulas

Proof. Take $M, \omega > 0$ with $\|T(t)\| \leq Me^{\omega t}$ for all $t \geq 0$. Set $\delta = \frac{1}{\omega(\omega+1)}$. We then define $V(0) = I, V(t) = \frac{1}{t}R(\frac{1}{t}, A)$ for $0 < t \leq \delta$, and $V(t) = 0$ for $t > \delta$. The Hille-Yosida estimate (1.14) yields

$$\|V(t)^n\| = t^{-n} \|R(\frac{1}{t}, A)^n\| \leq \frac{M}{(1-\omega t)^n} \leq Me^{\omega(1+\omega)t}$$

for $0 < t \leq \delta$ by our choice of $\delta$. From Lemma 1.23 we deduce the limit

$$\frac{1}{t}(V(t)x - x) = \frac{1}{t}R(\frac{1}{t}, A)x - x = \frac{1}{t}R(\frac{1}{t}, A)Ax \rightarrow Ax$$

as $t \rightarrow 0$ for all $x \in D(A)$. Theorem 3.22 implies the assertion. □

We note that one can show the resolvent approximation directly without involving Chernoff’s product formula, see Theorem 1.8.3 in [Pa]. In the next result we use notions introduced in Example 3.6.

Corollary 3.25. Let $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$ be open and $E = C_0(U)$ or let $(S, A, \mu)$ be a measure space and $E = L^p(\mu)$ for some $1 \leq p < \infty$. We assume that $A$ generates a $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ on $E$. Then $T(t)$ is positive for all $t \geq 0$ if and only if $R(\lambda, A)$ is positive for all $\lambda \geq \omega$ and some $\omega > \omega_0(A)$.

Proof. Let the resolvent be positive and $t > 0$. For all $f \in E_+$ and large $n \in \mathbb{N}$, the functions $(\frac{\lambda}{\mu}R(\frac{\lambda}{\mu}, A))^n f$ are non-negative and hence their limit $T(t)f$ also belongs to $E_+$. (Here we use Corollary 3.24.) For $\lambda > \omega_0(A)$, the converse follows in a similar way from formula (3.11). □

Employing the above result and the ‘weak maximum principle’, we show that the Dirichlet–Laplacian generates a positive semigroup.

Example 3.26. Let $G \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$ be open and bounded with a $C^2$ boundary, $1 < p < \infty$, $E_p = L^p(G)$, and $A_p = \Delta$ with $D(A_p) = W^{2,p}(G) \cap W^{1,p}_0(G)$. These operators generate bounded analytic $C_0$-semigroups $T_p(\cdot)$ on $E_p$, see Example 2.29. We want to prove their positivity.

Let $\lambda > 0, 1 < p < q < \infty$, and $f \in C_0(G)$. Note that $C_0(G) \subseteq E_r$ is dense for all $1 < r < \infty$. Set $u = R(\lambda, A_p)f \in D(A_p)$. Then $u$ also belongs to $D(A_p)$ and $\lambda u - \Delta u = f$ on $G$ so that $u = R(\lambda, A_p)f$ as $\lambda \in \rho(A_p)$. This means that $u$ belongs to $\bigcap_{1 < p < \infty} D(A_p)$ and that, by density, $R(\lambda, A_p)$ is the restriction of $R(\lambda, A_p)$. Hence, $u$ and $\Delta u = f - \lambda u$ are contained in $C_0(G)$ by the Sobolev embedding $D(A_p) \hookrightarrow C_0(G)$ for $p > \frac{m}{2}$, see Theorem 3.25 in [ST].

Let also $f \geq 0$. We show that $u \geq 0$. First, $v = \text{Im } u$ is contained in $D(A_p)$ and $\lambda u - \Delta v = \text{Im } f = 0.$ It follows that $v = 0$ and so $u$ is real-valued.

Suppose there was a point $x_0 \in G$ such that $u(x_0) < 0$. Since $u = 0$ on $\partial G$, the function $u$ has a minimum $u(x_1) < 0$ for some $x_1 \in G$. Proposition 3.1.10 in [Lu] thus yields $\Delta u(x_1) \geq 0$, implying $f(x_1) = \lambda u(x_1) - \Delta u(x_1) < 0$ which is impossible. Hence, $u = R(\lambda, A_p)f$ is non-negative.

Since $C_0(G)$ is dense in $E_p$ and the map $v \mapsto v_+$ is Lipschitz on $E_p$, we obtain the positivity of $R(\lambda, A_p)$ by approximation. Corollary 3.25 then shows the positivity of $T_p(t)$ for all $t \geq 0$ and $p \in (1, \infty)$. □

Similarly one can treat the case $E = C_0(G)$ starting from the sectoriality result Corollary 3.1.21 in [Lu].
CHAPTER 4

Long-term behavior

This chapter is devoted to the long-term behavior of \( C_0 \)-semigroups focusing on exponential stability and dichotomy. We want to derive these basic properties from conditions on the spectrum and the resolvent of the (given) generator.

4.1. Exponential stability and dichotomy

We first introduce the most basic property concerning the long-time behavior.

**Definition 4.1.** A \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( T(\cdot) \) is called (uniformly) exponentially stable if there exist constants \( M, \varepsilon > 0 \) such that

\[
\|T(t)\| \leq Me^{-\varepsilon t} \quad \text{for all } t \geq 0.
\]

The above concept can be reformulated as \( \omega_0(T) < 0 \) or equivalently as \( \|T(t)x\| \leq M e^{-\varepsilon t} \|x\| \) for all \( x \in X \) and \( t \geq 0 \).

Let \( A \) generate \( T(\cdot) \) and \( \varepsilon > 0 \). Observe that we have \( \|T(t)\| \leq e^{-\varepsilon t} \) for all \( t \geq 0 \) if and only if \( A - \varepsilon I \) is dissipative by the Lumer–Phillips Theorem 1.40.

Though this is a rather special situation, it covers the important case of the Dirichlet–Laplacian \( \Delta_D \) on \( L^2(G) \) for a bounded domain, see Example 1.52.

We first characterize exponential stability by properties of the semigroup itself. To this aim, we recall from Theorem 1.16 in [ST] that an operator \( T \in B(X) \) satisfies

\[
r(T) = \max \{ |\lambda| : \lambda \in \sigma(T) \} = \lim_{n \to \infty} \|T^n\|^\frac{1}{n} = \inf_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \|T^n\|^\frac{1}{n} \leq \|T\|. \tag{4.1}
\]

By the next result, a \( C_0 \)-semigroup automatically decays exponentially if it tends to 0 in operator norm as \( t \to 0 \).

**Proposition 4.2.** Let \( T(\cdot) \) be a \( C_0 \)-semigroup with generator \( A \). Then the following assertions are equivalent.

a) \( T(\cdot) \) is exponentially stable.

b) \( \|T(t_0)\| < 1 \) for some \( t_0 > 0 \).

c) \( r(T(t_1)) < 1 \) for some \( t_1 > 0 \).

d) \( \omega_0(A) < 0 \).

If this is the case, then statement b) is valid for all sufficiently large \( t_0 > 0 \), assertion c) is true for all \( t_1 > 0 \), and we have \( s(A) < 0 \), cf. (1.11). Moreover,

\[
e^{t s(A)} \leq e^{t \omega_0(A)} = r(T(t))
\]

for all \( t \geq 0 \) and (with \( \ln 0 := -\infty \)).

\[
\omega_0(A) = \lim_{t \to -\infty} \frac{1}{t} \ln \|T(t)\| = \inf_{t > 0} \frac{1}{t} \ln \|T(t)\|.
\]
PROOF. Since \( \ln \| T(t + s) \| \leq \ln \| T(t) \| + \ln \| T(s) \| \), the elementary Lemma IV.2.3 in [EN] shows that the limit \( \lim_{t \to \infty} \frac{1}{t} \ln \| T(t) \| \) exists and equals \\
\( \omega := \inf_{t \geq 0} \frac{1}{t} \ln \| T(t) \| \). This equality yields \( e^{\omega t} \leq \| T(t) \| \) for all \( t \geq 0 \) and thus \( \omega \leq \omega_0(A) \). Take any \( \omega_1 > \omega \). By the description via the limit, there is a time \( \tau > 0 \) such that \( \| T(t) \| \leq e^{\omega_1 t} \) for all \( t \geq \tau \) so that \( \| T(t) \| \leq Me^{\omega_1 t} \) for all \( t \geq 0 \) and the number \( M := \sup \{ e^{-\omega_1 t} \| T(t) \| : 0 \leq t \leq \tau \} \in (1, \infty) \). This means that \( \omega_1 \geq \omega_0(A) \) and so \( \omega \leq \omega_0(A) \). Using (4.1), we infer the identities

\[
\ell(T(t)) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \exp \left( \frac{1}{n} \ln \| T(nt) \| \right) = \exp \left( \frac{1}{n} \ln \| T(nt) \| \right) = e^{\ell \omega_0(A)}
\]

for all \( t > 0 \). All other assertions about \( T(\cdot) \) now follow. Proposition 1.21 says that \( s(A) \leq \omega_0(A) \), which yields the remaining inequality \( e^{\ell s(A)} \leq e^{\ell \omega_0(A)} \). \( \Box \)

For bounded \( A \), Example 5.4 of [ST] implies the equality \( s(A) = \omega_0(A) \). The next example due to Arendt (1993) shows that \( s(A) < \omega_0(A) \) is possible for unbounded generators. See also Examples IV.2.7 and IV.3.4 as well as Exercises IV.2.13 and IV.3.5 in [EN].

**Example 4.3.** Let \( X = L^p(1, \infty) \cap L^q(1, \infty) \) for \( 1 < p \leq q < \infty \) which is a reflexive Banach space for the norm \( \| f \| = \| f \|_p + \| f \|_q \). We look at the positive operators \( (T(t)f)(s) = f(se^t) \) for \( t \geq 0 \), \( f \in X \) and \( s > 1 \). Let also \( \tau \geq 0 \). Computing

\[
(T(t)T(\tau)f)(s) = (T(\tau)f)(se^t) = f(se^t e^\tau) = (T(t + \tau)f)(s),
\]

we see that \( T(\cdot) \) is a semigroup. Let \( \tau \in (1, \infty) \) and \( f \in L^r(1, \infty) \). We estimate

\[
\| T(t)f \|_r = \int_1^\infty |f(se^t)|^r ds = \int_1^\infty |f(\tau)|^r e^{-t} \, d\tau \leq e^{-t} \| f \|_r,
\]

where we substituted \( \tau = se^t \). For \( f \in X \) it follows

\[
\| T(t)f \| = \| T(t)f \|_p + \| T(t)f \|_q \leq e^{-t/p} \| f \|_p + e^{-t/q} \| f \|_q \leq e^{-1/q} \| f \|,
\]

so that \( T(t) \) belongs to \( B(X) \) with growth bound \( \omega_0(T) \leq -1/q \).

Let \( f \in C_c(1, \infty) \) and \( t \in (0, 1] \). There is a number \( s_0 > 1 \) such that \( f(se^t) = 0 \) for all \( s \geq s_0 \). By uniform continuity, the maps \( T(t)f \) tend to \( f \) uniformly as \( t \to 0 \), and thus in \( X \) due to the bounded support. Lemma 1.7 now yields that \( T(\cdot) \) is \( C_0 \)-semigroup. Let \( A \) be its generator. Let \( \tau \in (1, \infty) \). Taking \( p = q = r \), we also obtain a \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( T_\tau(\cdot) \) on \( L^r(1, \infty) \) with generator \( A_\tau \).

Let \( f_1 = 1_{[e^t, e^t+1]} \) for \( t \geq 0 \). Observe that \( \| f_1 \|_r = 1 \) and so \( \| f_1 \| = 2 \). Since

\[
T(t)f_1(s) = 1_{[e^t, e^t+1]}(se^t) = 1_{[1,1+e^{-t}]}(s)
\]

for \( s > 1 \), we have \( \| T(t)f_1 \|_r = e^{-t/r} \). It follows that

\[
\| T(t)f_1 \|_r \geq \| T(t)f_1 \|_q = e^{-t/q} = \frac{1}{2} e^{-t/q} \| f_1 \|
\]

and hence \( \omega_0(T) = \omega_0(A) = -1/q \).

To determine \( s(A) \), we look at the functions \( g_\alpha(s) = s^{-\alpha} \) for \( s > 1 \) and \( \alpha > 1/r \). Then \( g_\alpha \) belongs to \( L^r(1, \infty) \) and

\[
\frac{1}{t}(T(t)g_\alpha - g_\alpha) + \alpha g_\alpha = (\frac{1}{t}(e^{\alpha t} - 1) + \alpha) g_\alpha.
\]
These maps clearly tend to $0$ in $L^r(1,\infty)$ as $t \to 0$ so that $g_\alpha$ belongs to $D(A_r)$ with $A_rg_\alpha = -\alpha g_\alpha$. This means that $-\alpha$ is an eigenvalue of $A_r$ and so $s(A_r) \geq -1/r$. As $\omega_0(A_r) = -1/r$, Proposition 1.21 shows that $s(A_r) = \omega_0(A_r) = -1/r$.

We now pass to $X$. Since $X \hookrightarrow L^p(1,\infty)$ and $T(t) = T_p(t)|_X$, $A$ is the ‘part of $A_p$ in $X$’ (i.e., $Af = A_pf$ and $D(A) = \{f \in D(A_p) \cap X| A_pf \in X\}$) by Proposition II.2.3 in [EN]. Proposition 1.21 yields $R(0, A_p)f = \int_0^\infty T_p(t)f\,dt$.

We first take $f \in C_c(1,\infty)$ with $f(s) = 0$ for $s \geq s_0$. Observe that $T_p(t)f = 0$ for all $t > \ln s_0$ and that $t \mapsto T_p(t)f$ is also continuous in supremum norm. The integral thus converges both in $L^p(1,\infty)$ and in $C_0(1,\infty)$. We infer

$$R(0, A_p)f(s) = \left(\int_0^\infty T_p(t)f\,dt\right)(s) = \int_0^\infty f(se^t)\,dt = \int_s^\infty f(\tau)\,\frac{d\tau}{\tau},$$

substituting $\tau = se^t$. Hölder’s inequality now implies

$$|R(0, A_p)f(s)| \leq \|f\|_p\left(\int_s^\infty \tau^{-\frac{q}{p}}\,d\tau\right)^{\frac{1}{q} - \frac{1}{p}} = \|f\|_p\left(\frac{s^{1/p'}}{p' - 1}\right)^{\frac{1}{q} - \frac{1}{p}} = \frac{s^{-1/p}}{(p' - 1)^{1/p'}} \|f\|_p.$$

We finally take $q > p$. Then $\int_1^\infty s^{-q/p}\,ds$ is finite, so that $R(0, A_p)$ continuously maps $(C_c(1,\infty), \|\cdot\|_p)$ into $X$ and hence $L^p(1,\infty)$ into $X$ by density. This means that $[D(A_p)] \hookrightarrow X \hookrightarrow L^p(1,\infty)$. Proposition IV.2.17 of [EN] thus shows that $\sigma(A) = \sigma(A_p)$, and so

$$s(A) = -1/p < -1/q = \omega_0(A)$$

in view of the above results. Rescaling with a number $\omega \in (1/q, 1/p)$, we then obtain a generator $A + \omega J$ of an exponentially growing $C_0$-semigroup with the negative spectral bound $\omega - 1/p$.

As the best possible identity $s(A) = \omega_0(A)$ fails in general, one can try to show exponential stability under stronger assumptions. We will first establish it assuming an additional bound of the resolvent. In the next section we actually prove $s(A) = \omega_0(A)$ (and more) for a class of $C_0$-semigroups with better regularity properties including analytic ones. We will also comment on results about weaker convergence properties.

In infinite dimensions it is often more appropriate to complement spectral conditions by resolvent estimates. To establish a corresponding stability theorem, we need some properties of the Bochner integral and the Fourier transform.

Let $J \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ be an interval. Simple functions $f : J \to X$ and their integral are defined as in the case $X = \mathbb{R}$. A function $f : J \to X$ is called strongly measurable if there are simple functions $f_n : J \to X$ converging to $f$ pointwise almost everywhere. Observe that then the function $t \mapsto \|f(t)\|_X$ is measurable. By Theorem X.1.4 in [AE], the map $f$ is strongly measurable if and only if $f$ is Borel measurable and there is a null set $N \subseteq J$ such that $f(J \setminus N)$ is separable. (The latter is true for separable $X$, of course.) We then define the space

$$L^p(J, X) = \{f : J \to X | f \text{ is strongly measurable}, \|f(\cdot)\|_X \in L^p(J)\},$$

$$\|f\|_p = \|\|f(\cdot)\|_X\|_{L^p(J)} = \left(\int_J \|f(t)\|_X^p\,dt\right)^{\frac{1}{p}}$$

for $p \in [1,\infty)$ and analogously for $p = \infty$. Here we identify functions that coincide almost everywhere. One can show that $f$ belongs to $L^1(J, X)$ if and
only if there are simple functions converging to \( f \) pointwise a.e. such that the sequence \((f_n)_n\) is Cauchy for \( \| \cdot \|_1 \), see p.87 and Theorem X.3.14 in [AE]. This fact implies that the integrals \( \int f_n(t) \, dt \) converge in \( X \) and that their limit is independent of the choice of such a sequence \((f_n)_n\). This limit is denoted by \( \int f(t) \, dt \) and called the (Bochner) integral of \( f \).

It can be shown that \((L^p(J, X), \| \cdot \|_p)\) is a Banach space and that the Bochner integral satisfies the analogues of Hölder’s inequality and the theorems of Riesz-Fischer, Lebesgue and Fubini, see Chapter X of [AE]. We note that the dual of \( L^p(J, X) \) for \( p \in [1, \infty) \) coincides with \( L^{p'}(J, X^*) \) only for a certain class of Banach spaces \( X \), including reflexive ones. Otherwise the dual is larger. (See Theorem 1.3.10 and Corollary 1.3.22 of [HNVW].)

Let \( A \) be closed and \( f \in L^1(J, X) \) take values in \( D(A) \) a.e. and \( Af \) be integrable. The integral \( \int \int f(t) \, dt \) then belongs to \( D(A) \) and fulfills

\[
A \int \int f(t) \, dt = \int \int Af(t) \, dt,
\]

by Theorem C.4 of [EN].

For \( f \in L^1(\mathbb{R}, X) \) we define the Fourier transform

\[
\hat{f}(\tau) = \mathcal{F}f(\tau) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{-i\tau t} f(t) \, dt, \quad \tau \in \mathbb{R}.
\]

As in the scalar case one shows that \( \hat{f} \in C_0(\mathbb{R}, X) \) and the convolution and inversion theorems, see Theorem 1.8.1 of [ABHN]. Let \( X \) be Hilbert space. By Plancherel’s Theorem 1.8.2 of [ABHN], the Fourier transform then extends from \( L^1(\mathbb{R}, X) \cap L^2(\mathbb{R}, X) \) to a unitary operator

\[
\mathcal{F} : L^2(\mathbb{R}, X) \to L^2(\mathbb{R}, X)
\]

where \( L^2(\mathbb{R}, X) \) is a Hilbert space with the inner product

\[
(f|g) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} (f(t)|g(t))_X \, dt, \quad f, g \in L^2(\mathbb{R}, X).
\]

In the theorem below we also need the next auxiliary result by Datko (1970).

**Lemma 4.4.** Let \( T(\cdot) \) be a \( C_0 \)-semigroup and \( 1 \leq p < \infty \). If \( T(\cdot)x \in L^p(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, X) \) for all \( x \in X \), then \( T(\cdot) \) is exponentially stable.

**Proof.** Define the bounded operator

\[
\Phi_n : X \to L^p(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, X); \quad x \mapsto 1_{[0,n]}T(\cdot)x,
\]

for each \( n \in \mathbb{N} \). The assumption shows that \( \sup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \| \Phi_n x \| \) is finite for all \( x \in X \), and hence \( C := \sup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \| \Phi_n \| < \infty \) thanks to the principle of uniform boundedness. As a result, \( \int_0^t \| T(s)x \|^p \, ds \leq C^p \| x \|^p \) for all \( t \geq 0 \) and \( x \in X \). Fix constants \( M \geq 1 \) and \( \omega > 0 \) such that \( \| T(t) \| \leq Me^{\omega t} \) for all \( t \geq 0 \). Let \( t \geq 1 \) and \( x \in X \). We calculate

\[
\frac{1 - e^{-\rho\omega}}{\rho\omega} \| T(t)x \|^p \leq \frac{1 - e^{-\rho\omega t}}{\rho\omega} \| T(t)x \|^p = \int_0^t e^{-\rho\omega s} \| T(s)T(t-s)x \|^p \, ds
\]

\[
\leq \int_0^t Me^{\omega sp}e^{-\omega sp} \| T(t-s)x \|^p \, ds
\]
Then there are constants $M_t$ such that

$$\|T(t)\| \leq N \text{ for all } t \geq 0,$$

where $N := \max\{Me^{\omega^2}, (p\omega)^{1/p}CM(1 - e^{-p\omega})^{-1/p}\}$. It follows

$$t\|T(t)x\|^p = \int_0^t\|T(t-s)T(s)x\|^p\,ds \leq N^p \int_0^t\|T(s)x\|^p\,ds \leq (CN)^p\|x\|^p,$$

and hence $\|T(t)\| \leq \frac{CN}{t}$. Proposition 4.2 now implies the assertion.

We first give a heuristic argument for the following stability theorem. Let $A$ generate the $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ on a Hilbert space $X$. Assume that $s(A) < 0$. Pick a number $\omega > \omega_0(A)$. We set

$$T_\omega(t) = \begin{cases} e^{-\omega t}T(t), & t \geq 0, \\ 0, & t < 0. \end{cases}$$

Then there are constants $M \geq 1$ and $\varepsilon > 0$ such that $\|T_\omega(t)\| \leq Me^{-\varepsilon t}$ for all $t \geq 0$. Take $x \in X$ and $t \in \mathbb{R}$. The map $T_\omega(\cdot)x$ belongs to $L^1(\mathbb{R}, X) \cap L^2(\mathbb{R}, X)$ with 2-norm less or equal $M(2\varepsilon)^{-1/2}\|x\|$. Using Proposition 1.21, we compute

$$\mathcal{F}(T_\omega(\cdot)x)(\tau) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_0^\infty e^{-i\tau t}e^{-\omega t}T(t)x\,dt = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} R(\omega + i\tau, A)x.$$  \hfill (4.2)

Plancherel’s theorem then yields

$$\|R(\omega + i\cdot, A)x\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}, X)} = \sqrt{2\pi} \|T_\omega(\cdot)x\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}, X)} \leq M \sqrt{\pi/\varepsilon}\|x\|. \quad (4.3)$$

We want to transform this inequality to the imaginary axis. From the resolvent equation (1.7) we infer

$$R(i\tau, A)x = R(\omega + i\tau, A)x + \omega R(i\tau, A)R(\omega + i\tau, A)x.$$ \hfill (4.4)

Assuming the boundedness $\|R(i\cdot, A)\|$ on $\mathbb{R}$, from the above results we infer that $R(i, A)x$ is an element of $L^2(\mathbb{R}, X)$. It is now tempting to use Plancherel’s theorem once more and to conclude

$$\infty > \|R(i, A)x\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}, X)} = \|\mathcal{F}(T_0(\cdot)x)\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}, X)} = \sqrt{2\pi} \|T(\cdot)x\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}, X)}.$$  \hfill (4.5)

Datko’s lemma would then yield $\omega_0(A) < 0$. However, above we need the assertion $\omega_0(A) < 0$ to employ (4.2) for $\omega = 0$ and to apply $\mathcal{F}$ to $T_0(\cdot)x$.

These problems can actually be settled by means of a refined version of (4.2) and an approximation argument, see the proof of Theorem V.1.11 of [EN]. Below we instead use a shorter argument taken from Theorem 5.2.1 of [ABHN]. The resulting stability theorem of Gearhart is special case of Theorem 4.17, which has a much more involved proof not given in these lectures.

**Theorem 4.5.** Let $X$ be a Hilbert space. A $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ with generator $A$ is exponentially stable if and only if $s(A) \leq 0$ and $C := \sup_{\lambda \in \mathbb{C}_+} \|R(\lambda, A)\| < \infty$.

If this is the case, $s(A)$ is negative.
Proof. The necessity of the conditions and the addendum follow from Proposition 1.21. Let the conditions in display be true. We set \( \omega_+ = \max(0, \omega_0(A)) \). Take \( \omega > \omega_+ \) and define \( T_\alpha(\cdot) \) as above. For \( \tau \in \mathbb{R} \), we also abbreviate \( r_\alpha(\tau) = R(\alpha + i\tau, A)x \).

Fix \( \varpi > \omega_+ \). There exist constants \( M \geq 1 \) and \( \varepsilon > 0 \) such that \( \|T(t)\| \leq Me^{(\varpi-\varepsilon)t} \) for all \( t \geq 0 \) and so \( T_\varpi(\cdot)x \) is an element \( L^1(\mathbb{R}, X) \cap L^2(\mathbb{R}, X) \) with 2-norm less or equal \( M(2\varepsilon)^{-1/2}\|x\| \). As in (4.2)–(4.4) we thus obtain

\[
\|r_\varpi\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}, X)} \leq M\sqrt{\pi/\varepsilon}\|x\|, \\
\|r_\alpha\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}, X)} \leq \|\varpi\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}, X)} + |\varpi - \alpha|\|r_\alpha\|_{L^\infty(\mathbb{R}, X)}\|r_\varpi\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}, X)} \\
\leq M\sqrt{\pi/\varepsilon(1 + |\varpi - \alpha|C)}\|x\| =: \sqrt{2\pi c(\alpha)}\|x\|, \\
\|T_\varpi(\cdot)x\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}, X)} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\|r_\varpi\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}, X)} \leq c(\varpi)\|x\|.
\]

Note that we can only estimate \( T_\varpi(\cdot) \) with \( \omega > \omega_+ \) but not \( T_\alpha(\cdot) \). Fatou's lemma then yields

\[
\|T_{\omega_+}(\cdot)x\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}, X)} = \int_0^\infty \lim_{\varpi \to \omega_+} \liminf_{\omega \to \omega_+} e^{-\varpi t}\|T(t)x\| dt \leq \liminf_{\omega \to \omega_+} \|T_\omega(\cdot)x\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}, X)} \\
\leq \liminf_{\omega \to \omega_+} c(\omega)^2\|x\|^2 \leq \frac{M^2(1 + \varpi C)^2}{2\varepsilon}\|x\|^2.
\]

Dakto's Lemma 4.4 now implies that \( (T_{\omega_+}(t))_{t \geq 0} \) is exponentially stable. This is impossible if \( \omega_+ = \omega_0(A) \) so that \( \omega_0(A) \) has to be negative. □

In a general Banach space \( X \) the boundedness of the resolvent \( R(\cdot, A) \) on \( \mathbb{C}_+ \) only implies the existence of some constants \( M, \varepsilon > 0 \) such that we have

\[
\|T(t)x\| \leq Me^{-\varepsilon t}\|x\|_A \tag{4.5}
\]

for all \( t \geq 0 \) and \( x \in D(A) \) by a result due to Weis and Wrobel, see Proposition 5.1.6 and Theorem 5.1.7 in [ABHN]. We thus obtain exponential decay of classical solutions only. In Example 4.3, the resolvent of \( A + \omega I \) is bounded on \( \mathbb{C}_+ \) by Theorem 5.3. There are generators \( A \) with \( s(A) < 0 \) such that (4.5) fails, see Remark 5.5.

We add a typical example for Theorem 4.5, concerned with wave equations having a strictly positive damping.\textsuperscript{1}

Example 4.6. We first recall the setting and the results of Example 3.7. Let \( G \subseteq \mathbb{R}^3 \) be bounded and open with a \( C^1 \)-boundary, \( \Delta_D \) be the Dirichlet-Laplacian on \( L^2(G) \), and \( b \in L^\infty(G) \) satisfy \( b(x) \geq \beta \) for almost every \( x \in G \) and some \( \beta > 0 \). We set \( E = X \times L^2(G) \), where \( Y = W^{1,2}_0(G) \) is endowed with the norm \( \|v\|_Y = \|\nabla v\|_2 \) from (1.33), and define the operator

\[
A = (\begin{smallmatrix} 0 & I_b \\ \Delta_D & 0 \end{smallmatrix}) = A_0 + (\begin{smallmatrix} 0 & b \\ \Delta_D & 0 \end{smallmatrix}) \quad \text{with} \quad D(A) = D(\Delta_D) \times Y
\]

on \( E \). It generates a \( C_0 \)-group \( T(\cdot) \) solving the damped wave equation

\[
u''(t) = \Delta_D \varphi(t) - bu'(t), \quad t \geq 0, \quad u(0) = u_0, \quad u'(0) = u_1. \tag{4.6}
\]

More precisely, for \((u_0, u_1) \in E \) the orbit \( w(t) = T(t)(u_0, u_1) \) has the form \( w = (u, u') \) for the unique solution \( u \) of (4.6) in \( C^2([0, \infty), W^{1,2}_0(G)) \) ∩

\textsuperscript{1}In the lectures we presented a different version of the proof.
$C^1(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, L^2(G)) \cap C(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, Y)$. Here we consider the operator $\Delta_D$ also as a map from $Y = W^{1,2}_0(G)$ to $W^{-1,2}(G)$.

We first check that $A$ is dissipative. The summand $A_0$ is skewadjoint by Example 1.53. For $w = (\varphi, \psi) \in D(A)$ we can thus compute

$$\text{Re}(Aw|w)_E = \text{Re}(A_0 w|w) - \int_G b|\psi|^2 \, dx = \int_G b|\psi|^2 \, dx \leq 0,$$

as desired. Hence, the semigroups $(T(t))_{t \geq 0}$ is contractive. We assert that it is exponentially stable, and thus the ‘energy’

$$\|T(t)(u_0, u_1)\|_E^2 = \|\nabla u\|_2^2 + \|\partial_t u(t)\|_2^2$$

of the solution decays as $ce^{-2\kappa t}\|(u_0, u_1)\|_E^2$ for some $c, \kappa > 0$. This claim is proved by means of Theorem 4.5.

To this end, we first we first note that $A$ is invertible with bounded inverse

$$A^{-1}(f) = (\Delta_D^{-1}(bf + g), \quad (f, g) \in E).$$

We next show that

$$i\mathbb{R} \subseteq \rho(A) \quad \text{and} \quad \sup_{i \tau \in \mathbb{R}} \|R(i\tau, A)\| =: \kappa < \infty. \quad (4.7)$$

In view of Remark 1.17, by inequality (4.7) each number $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ with $|\text{Re}\lambda| \in \left[0, \frac{1}{2\kappa}\right]$ is an element of $\rho(A)$ and the resolvent is bounded by $\|R(\lambda, A)\| \leq 2C$. Due this bound and the Hille-Yosida estimate (1.14), the assumptions of Theorem 4.5 are fulfilled and the assertion follows.

We establish (4.7). Since $s(A) \leq 0$, any point $i\tau \in \sigma(A)$ would belong to $\partial \sigma(A)$ so that Proposition 1.19 of [ST] (or (4.14) below) would yield

$$m(\tau) := \inf\{\|\tau w - Aw\|_E|w \in D(A), \|w\|_E = 1\} = 0.$$  

Note that $\|R(i\tau, A)\| \leq 1/m(\tau)$ if $m(\tau) > 0$. Therefore the lower bound inf$_{i \tau \in \mathbb{R}} m(\tau) =: m_0 > 0$ will imply our claim (4.7) with $\kappa = 1/m_0$.

Since $0 \in \rho(A)$ and $\rho(A)$ is open, there is a number $\tau_0 > 0$ such that $[-i\tau_0, i\tau_0] \subseteq \rho(A)$. For $\tau \in [-i\tau_0, i\tau_0]$ and $w \in D(A)$ with $\|w\|_E = 1$, we set $i\tau w - Aw = z$ and obtain the first bound

$$\|i\tau w - Aw\|_E = \|z\|_E \geq \|R(i\tau, A)^{-1}\| \|R(i\tau, A)z\|_E = \|R(i\tau, A)\|^{-1},$$

$$\inf_{|\tau| \leq \tau_0} m(\tau) \geq \left(\max_{|\tau| \leq \tau_0} \|R(i\tau, A)\|\right)^{-1} > 0.$$  

Fix $\varepsilon \in (0, \frac{\delta}{2})$ with $0 < \frac{3\varepsilon \delta}{\delta - 2\varepsilon} < \tau_0$. Suppose there are $|\tau| \geq \tau_0$ and $w = (\varphi, \psi) \in D(A)$ such that $\|w\|_E^2 = \|\nabla \varphi\|_2^2 + \|\psi\|_2^2 = 1$ and $\|i\tau w - Aw\|_E \leq \varepsilon$. We infer

$$\varepsilon \geq \left| \left( \left( i\tau I - A \right) \left( \begin{array}{c} \varphi \\ \psi \end{array} \right) \right) \right|$$

$$= \left| \int_G \nabla (i\tau \varphi - \psi) \cdot \nabla \varphi \, dx + \int_G \left( -\Delta_D \varphi + (i\tau + b)\psi \right) \bar{\psi} \, dx \right|$$

$$= \left| i\tau (\|\nabla \varphi\|_2^2 + \|\psi\|_2^2) - \int_G \nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla \bar{\psi} \, dx + \int_G \nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla \bar{\psi} \, dx + \int_G b|\psi|^2 \, dx \right|$$

$$= \left| i\tau + 2 \text{Im} \int_G \nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla \bar{\psi} \, dx \right| + \int_G b|\psi|^2 \, dx \right|.$$
using the definition of $\Delta_D$. The imaginary and real parts thus satisfy

$$\varepsilon \geq \tau + 2 \Im \int_G \nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla \psi \, dx$$

and

$$\varepsilon \geq \int_G b|\psi|^2 \, dx \geq \beta \|\psi\|_2^2,$$

The second estimate yields $\|\nabla \varphi\|_2^2 = 1 - \|\psi\|_2^2 \geq 1 - \frac{\varepsilon}{\beta}$, and hence

$$1 - 2\|\nabla \varphi\|_2^2 \leq \frac{2\varepsilon}{\beta} - 1 < 0$$

because of $\varepsilon < \frac{\beta}{2}$. We conclude that

$$|\tau| \left(1 - \frac{2\varepsilon}{\beta}\right) \leq |\tau| |1 - 2\|\nabla \varphi\|_2^2| = |\tau + 2 \Im \int_G \nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla \psi \, dx|$$

$$\leq |\tau + 2 \Im \int_G \nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla \psi \, dx| + 2 \Im \int_G \nabla \varphi \cdot (\nabla \nabla \varphi - \nabla \psi) \, dx|$$

$$\leq \varepsilon + 2\|\nabla \varphi\|_2 \|\nabla \nabla \varphi - \nabla \psi\|_2 \leq \varepsilon + 2\|\nabla I - A\|_E \leq 3\varepsilon$$

by the choice of $w = (\varphi, \psi)$ and the definition of $A$. It follows $|\tau| \leq \frac{3\varepsilon \beta}{\beta - 2\varepsilon} < \tau_0$. This contradiction yields $m(\tau) \geq \varepsilon > 0$ for all $|\tau| \geq \tau_0$, as needed.

We next introduce a more sophisticated concept for the long-time behavior.

**Definition 4.7.** A $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ has an exponential dichotomy if there are constants $N, \delta > 0$ and a projection $P = P^2 \in \mathcal{B}(X)$ such that $T(t)P = PT(t)$, $T(t) : N(P) \to N(P)$ has an inverse denoted by $T_u(\cdot) + P$, and we have the estimates $\|T(t)P\| \leq Ne^{-\delta t}$ and $\|T_u(\cdot)(I - P)\| \leq Ne^{-\delta t}$ for all $t \geq 0$.

Setting $Q = I - P$, we recall from Lemma 2.16 in [FA] that $N(P) = QX$ and $Q = Q^2$. Observe that exponential dichotomy coincides with exponential stability if $P = I$. Moreover, exponential dichotomy means that $T(t)X_j \subseteq X_j$ for all $t \geq 0$ where $j = \{s, u\}$, $X_s := PX$ and $X_u := QX$, that $T_s(\cdot) := T(\cdot)|_{X_s}$ is an exponentially stable $C_0$-semigroup on $X_s$ and that $T(\cdot)$ induces a $C_0$-group $T_u(\cdot)$ on $X_u$ which is exponentially stable in backwards time. (Use Lemma 1.29 for the group property.)

We first characterize this notion in terms of the spectrum of $T(t)$.

**Proposition 4.8.** A $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ has an exponential dichotomy if and only if $\mathbb{S}^1 := \{\lambda \in \mathbb{C} \mid |\lambda| = 1\} \subseteq \rho(T(t))$ for some (and hence all) $t > 0$.

**Proof.** Let $T(\cdot)$ have an exponential dichotomy. Take $t > 0$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{S}^1$. Then the series

$$R_\lambda = \lambda^{-1} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \lambda^{-n}T(nt)P - \lambda^{-1} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda^n T_u(-nt)Q$$

converges in $\mathcal{B}(X)$. We then compute

$$(\lambda I - T(t))R_\lambda = \left(I - \lambda^{-1}T(t)\right) \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\lambda^{-1}T(t)\right)^n P - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\lambda^{-1}T_u(t)\right)^{-n} Q\right)$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\lambda^{-1}T(t)\right)^n P - \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left(\lambda^{-1}T(t)\right)^{-k} P$$
By yields the exponential stability of 4.2. Let 

\[ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \lambda^{-1} T_n(t) \right)^{-n} Q + \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left( \lambda^{-1} T_k(t) \right)^{-k} Q \]

\[ = P + Q = I. \]

Similarly one sees that \( R_{\lambda}(\lambda I - T(t)) = I \), and hence \( T \) is contained in \( \rho(T(t)) \) for all \( t > 0 \).

Conversely, let \( T \subseteq \rho(T(t)) \) for some \( t > 0 \). We define the ‘spectral projection’

\[ P := \frac{1}{2 \pi i} \int_{\mathbb{T}} R(\lambda, T(t)) \, d\lambda. \]

Theorem 5.5 in [ST] implies that \( P^2 = P \in \mathcal{B}(X) \) commutes with \( T(t) \), \( \sigma(T_n(t)) = \sigma(T(t)) \cap B(0,1) \), and \( \sigma(T_u(t)) = \sigma(T(t)) \setminus B(0,1) \) for all \( t > 0 \). Since \( r(T_u(t)) < 1 \), Proposition 4.2 yields the exponential stability of \( T_u(\cdot) \) on \( PX \). Moreover, \( T_u(t) \) is invertible and \( \sigma(T_u(t)^{-1}) = \sigma(T(t)^{-1}) \subseteq B(0,1) \) by Proposition 1.20 in [ST]. As for \( T_\cdot(\cdot) \), we infer that \( (T_u(t)^{-1})_{t \geq 0} \) is exponentially stable on \( QX \). Consequently, \( T(\cdot) \) has an exponential dichotomy. \( \square \)

In Corollary 4.16 and Theorem 4.17 we characterize exponential dichotomy in terms of \( A \) in certain situations. Here we give a typical implication of this property on the long-time behavior of inhomogeneous problems.

**Proposition 4.9.** Let \( A \) generate the \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( T(\cdot) \) having an exponential dichotomy with projections \( P \) and \( Q = I - P \). Assume that \( u_0 \in X \) and \( f \in C_0(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, X) \) satisfy

\[ Q u_0 = - \int_0^\infty T_u(-t)Qf(t) \, dt. \]

Then the mild solution \( u \) of the inhomogeneous problem (2.6) on \( \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \) belongs to \( C_0(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, X) \) and fulfills

\[ u(t) = T(t)P u_0 + \int_0^t T(t-s)P f(s) \, ds - \int_t^\infty T_u(t-s)Qf(s) \, ds, \quad t \geq 0. \tag{4.8} \]

**Proof.** Let \( t \geq 0 \). We first note that the integrals in the displayed equations above and those below exist because of the exponential dichotomy. Using Duhamel’s formula (2.7) and \( P + Q = I \), we compute

\[ u(t) = T(t)u_0 + \int_0^t T(t-s)P f(s) \, ds + \int_0^\infty T_u(t-s)Qf(s) \, ds \]

\[ - \int_t^\infty T_u(t-s)Qf(s) \, ds \]

\[ = T(t)u_0 + \int_0^t T(t-s)P f(s) \, ds + T(t) \int_0^\infty T_u(-s)Qf(s) \, ds \]

\[ - \int_t^\infty T_u(t-s)Qf(s) \, ds, \]

so that the assumption yields the second assertion.
4.2. Spectral mapping theorems

Let \( \varepsilon > 0 \). There is a time \( s_\varepsilon \) such that \( \| f(s) \| \leq \varepsilon \) for all \( s \geq s_0 \). Let \( t \geq s_0 \). Formula (4.8) and the exponential dichotomy lead to the estimate

\[
\| u(t) \| \leq N e^{-\delta t} \| u_0 \| + \int_0^{s_0} N e^{-\delta(t-s)} f(s) ds + \int_{s_0}^t N e^{-\delta(s-t)} \varepsilon ds
\]

which easily implies that \( u(t) \to 0 \) as \( t \to \infty \). \( \square \)

4.2. Spectral mapping theorems

Let \( A \) generate the \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( T(\cdot) \). We say that \( T(\cdot) \) or \( A \) satisfy the spectral mapping theorem if

\[
\sigma(T(t)) \setminus \{0\} = e^{t\sigma(A)} \quad \text{for all} \quad t \geq 0,
\]

(4.9)

where we put \( e^0 = 0 \). Observe that we have to exclude 0 on the left-hand side since 0 does not belong to \( e^{t\sigma(A)} \). Theorem 5.3 of [ST] shows even the identity \( \sigma(T(t)) = e^{t\sigma(A)} \) for \( A \in \mathcal{B}(X) \).

Assume for a moment that spectral mapping theorem is true. It then implies

\[
r(T(t)) = \max \{ |e^{\mu t}| : \mu \in \sigma(A) \} = \max \{ |e^{t\text{Re}\mu}| : \mu \in \sigma(A) \} = e^{t\omega(A)}
\]

(4.10)

for all \( t \geq 0 \) and hence the equality \( s(A) = \omega(A) \) by Proposition 4.2. Using also Proposition 4.8, we also deduce from (4.9) the equivalence

\[
T(\cdot) \text{ has exp. dichotomy} \iff \mathbb{S}^1 \subseteq \sigma(T(1)) \iff i\mathbb{R} \subseteq \rho(A).
\]

(4.11)

Example 4.3 thus tells us that the spectral mapping theorem is not valid for all \( C_0 \)-semigroups. We first explore which partial results are still true. For this purpose, we recall the following concepts and results from spectral theory for a closed operator \( A \). We define by

\[
\sigma_p(A) = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} : \lambda I - A \text{ is not injective} \},
\]
\[
\sigma_{ap}(A) = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} : \forall n \in \mathbb{N} \exists x_n \in D(A) : \| x_n \| = 1, \lambda x_n - Ax_n \to 0 \text{ (} n \to \infty \text{)} \},
\]
\[
\sigma_r(A) = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} : (\lambda I - A)D(A) \text{ is not dense} \}
\]

the point spectrum, the approximate point spectrum and the residual spectrum of \( A \), respectively. We call the elements of \( \sigma_{ap}(A) \) approximate eigenvalues and the corresponding vectors approximate eigenvectors. Proposition 1.19 of [ST] shows that

\[
\sigma_{ap}(A) = \sigma_p(A) \cup \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} : (\lambda I - A)D(A) \text{ is not closed} \},
\]

(4.12)
\[
\sigma(A) = \sigma_{ap}(A) \cup \sigma_r(A),
\]

(4.13)
\[
\partial \sigma(A) \subseteq \sigma_{ap}(A).
\]

(4.14)

Let \( A \) be also densely defined. Theorem 1.24 of [ST] then says that

\[
\sigma_r(A) = \sigma_p(A^*), \quad \sigma(A) = \sigma(A^*), \quad \text{and} \quad R(\lambda, A)^* = R(\lambda, A^*)
\]

(4.15)

for \( \lambda \in \rho(A) \). The following spectral inclusion theorem provides the easy inclusion in (4.9) and in related formulas for the parts of the spectrum.
Proposition 4.10. Let $A$ generate the $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$. We then have
\[ e^{\sigma(A)} \subseteq \sigma(T(t)) \quad \text{and} \quad e^{\sigma_j(A)} \subseteq \sigma_j(T(t)) \]
for all $t \geq 0$ and $j \in \{p, ap, r\}$. (Approximate) Eigenvectors of $A$ for the (approximate) eigenvalue $\lambda$ are (approximate) eigenvectors of $T(t)$ for the (approximate) eigenvalue $e^{\lambda t}$.

Proof. Let $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ and $t \geq 0$. In view of (4.13), we only have to treat the parts $\sigma_j$. Recall from Lemma 1.19 that
\[ e^{\lambda x} - T(t)x = (\lambda - A) \int_0^t e^{\lambda(t-s)}T(s)x \, ds \quad \text{for } x \in X, \]
\[ = \int_0^t e^{\lambda(t-s)}T(s)(\lambda x - Ax) \, ds \quad \text{for } x \in D(A). \]
Hence, if $\lambda x = Ax$ for some $x \in D(A) \setminus \{0\}$, then $e^{\lambda t}x = T(t)x$ and $x$ is an eigenvector of $T(t)$ for the eigenvalue $e^{\lambda t} \in \sigma_p(T(t))$. If $(\lambda I - A)D(A)$ is not dense or not equal to $X$, then $R(e^{\lambda t}I - T(t))$ has the same property. Finally, let $x_n$ be approximate eigenvectors of $A$ for $\lambda \in \sigma_{ap}(A)$. It follows that
\[ ||e^{\lambda t}x_n - T(t)x_n|| \leq c ||\lambda x_n - Ax_n|| \rightarrow 0 \]
as $n \to \infty$ so that $x_n$ are approximate eigenvectors for $e^{\lambda t} \in \sigma_{ap}(T(t))$. □

We have thus shown the inequality $s(A) \leq \omega_0(A)$ from Proposition 4.2 again. We also obtain the analogous implication for exponential dichotomy.

Corollary 4.11. Let $A$ generate the $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ having an exponential dichotomy. We then have $i\mathbb{R} \subseteq \rho(A)$ since $\mathbb{S}^1 \subseteq \rho(T(1)) \subseteq \mathbb{C} \setminus e^{\sigma(A)}$ by Propositions 4.8 and 4.10.

In the following example we use the spectral inclusion to compute the spectra of the translation semigroup on 1-periodic functions. Here the spectral mapping theorem fails for irrational $t$, but a variant with an additional closure holds.

Example 4.12. Let $X = \{f \in C(\mathbb{R}) \mid \forall t \in \mathbb{R} : f(t) = f(t + 1)\}$ be endowed with the supremum norm and $T(t)f = f(\cdot + t)$ for $t \in \mathbb{R}$ and $f \in X$. It is easy to see that $X$ is a Banach space and that $T(\cdot)$ is an isometric $C_0$-group on $X$ (since each $f \in X$ is uniformly continuous). As in Example 1.22 one can verify that the generator $A$ of $T(\cdot)$ is given by $Af = f'$ with $D(A) = C^1(\mathbb{R}) \cap X$. Let $\Gamma_k = \{\lambda \in \mathbb{C} \mid \lambda^k = 1\}$ for $k \in \mathbb{N}$. We claim that
\[ \sigma(A) = \sigma_p(A) = 2\pi i \mathbb{Z}, \]
\[ \sigma(T(t)) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{S}^1 = \exp(t\sigma(A)), & t \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \setminus \mathbb{Q}, \\ \Gamma_k = e^{\sigma(A)}, & t = j/k, \ j, k \in \mathbb{N}, \ \text{without common divisors}. \end{cases} \]

Proof. Clearly, $e^{2\pi i n}$ belongs to $D(A)$ and $Ae^{2\pi i n} = 2\pi i n e^{2\pi i n}$ for all $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. Note that $T(n) = I$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$. Proposition 4.10 thus yields $e^{\sigma(A)} \subseteq \sigma(T(1)) = \{1\}$ so that $\sigma(A) \subseteq 2\pi i \mathbb{Z}$. The first assertion is proved.

Since $T(t)$ is isometric and invertible, Proposition 4.2 implies that
\[ r(T(t)) = 1 = r(T(t)^{-1}) = \min\{||A|| \mid A \in \sigma(T(t))\}, \]
where we also use Proposition 1.20 of [ST]. This means that \( \sigma(T(t)) \) is included in \( \mathbb{S}^1 \) for \( t \geq 0 \). If \( t \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \setminus \mathbb{Q} \), it is known that \( e^{\lambda t} = e^{2\pi i n Z} \) is dense in \( \mathbb{S}^1 \).

The second claim now follows from Proposition 4.10 and the closedness of the spectra because of

\[
\mathbb{S}^1 = \overline{e^{\lambda t}} \subseteq \sigma(T(t)) \subseteq \mathbb{S}^1.
\]

Let \( t = j/k \) for some \( j, k \in \mathbb{N} \) without common divisors. The spectral mapping theorem for bounded operators from Theorem 5.3 of [ST] then yields

\[
\sigma(T(t))^k = \sigma(T(\frac{j}{k})) = \sigma(T(j)) = \{1\};
\]

i.e., \( \sigma(T(t)) \subseteq \Gamma_k \). On the other hand, the set \( e^{\lambda t} = \exp(2\pi i j Z) \) is equal to \( \Gamma_k \) and contained in \( \sigma(T(t)) \) by Proposition 4.10, establishing the last assertion. \( \square \)

In order to use spectral information on \( A \) to show exponential stability or dichotomy, we need the converse inclusions in Proposition 4.10. As we have seen they fail in general for the spectrum itself. We next show them for the point and residual spectrum, starting with the spectral mapping theorem for the point spectrum.

**Theorem 4.13.** Let \( A \) generate the \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( T(\cdot) \). We then have

\[
\sigma_p(T(t)) \setminus \{0\} = e^{\lambda t} \sigma_p(A) \quad \text{for all } t \geq 0.
\]

**Proof.** We have to prove \( \sigma_p(T(t)) \setminus \{0\} \subseteq e^{\lambda t} \sigma_p(A) \) since the other inclusion was shown in Proposition 4.10. Let \( t > 0 \), \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \) and \( x \in X \setminus \{0\} \) such that \( e^{\lambda t} x = T(t)x \). Hence, the function \( u(s) = e^{-\lambda s} T(s)x \) has period \( t > 0 \). Suppose that all Fourier coefficients

\[
\frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{\sqrt{t}} \int_0^t e^{-2\pi i n s} u(s) \, ds, \quad n \in \mathbb{Z},
\]

would vanish. Therefore all Fourier coefficients of the scalar function \( \varphi(t) = \langle u(t), x^* \rangle \) are 0 for any \( x^* \in X^* \). Parseval's formula (see Example 3.17 of [FA]) then yields \( \varphi = 0 \), and so \( u = 0 \) by the Hahn-Banach theorem. This is wrong and thus there exists an index \( m \in \mathbb{Z} \) with

\[
y := \int_0^t e^{-2\pi i n s} e^{-\lambda s} T(s)x \, ds \neq 0.
\]

Lemma 1.19 shows that \( y \in D(A) \) and

\[
(A - (\lambda + \frac{2\pi i m}{t})) y = e^{-\lambda t} e^{-2\pi i t} T(t)x - x = 0.
\]

Therefore the number \( \mu := \lambda + \frac{2\pi i m}{t} \) belongs to \( \sigma_p(A) \) and so \( e^{\lambda t} = e^{\mu t} \) to \( e^{\lambda t} \sigma_p(A) \). We have shown \( \sigma_p(T(t)) \subseteq e^{\lambda t} \sigma_p(A) \), as needed. \( \square \)

Formula (4.15) now suggests to use duality and derive a spectral mapping theorem for the residual spectrum from Theorem 4.13. Unfortunately, in general \( T(\cdot)^* \) fails to be strongly continuous. (For instance, the adjoint \( T(\cdot)^* \) of the left translations \( T(\cdot) \) on \( L^1(\mathbb{R}) \) are the right translations on \( L^\infty(\mathbb{R}) \) which are not strongly continuous by Example 1.9.) To deal with this problem, we introduce a new concept.
Let $A$ generate the $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ and set $C = \sup_{0 \leq t \leq 1} \|T(t)\|$. We define the sun dual

$$X^\circ = \{ x^* \in X^* \mid T(t)^*x^* \to x^* \text{ as } t \to 0 \}.$$ 

We first check that $X^\circ$ is a closed subspace of $X^*$ being invariant under $T(\cdot)^*$.

Let $x_n^* \in X^\circ$ with $x_n^* \to x^*$ in $X^*$ as $n \to \infty$. Take $\varepsilon > 0$. There is an index $k \in \mathbb{N}$ with $\|x_k^* - x^*\| \leq \varepsilon$. We fix a time $t_\varepsilon \in (0,1]$ such that $\|T(t)^*x_k^* - x_k^*\| \leq \varepsilon$ for all $t \in [0,t_\varepsilon)$. Since $\|T(t)\| = \|T(t)^*\|$ by Proposition 5.42 of [FA], it follows

$$\|T(t)^*x^* - x^*\| \leq \|T(t)^*\| \|x^* - x_k^*\| + \|T(t)^*x_k^* - x_k^*\| + \|x_k^* - x^*\| \leq (2 + C)\varepsilon,$$

so that $x^* \in X^\circ$ and $X^\circ$ is closed. Clearly, $T(\cdot)^*$ is a semigroup on $X^*$. Let $t, \tau \geq 0$ and $x^* \in X^\circ$. We then obtain the invariance of $X^\circ$ by computing

$$T(t)^*T(\tau)^*x^* - T(\tau)^*x^* = T(\tau)^*(T(t)^*x^* - x^*) \to 0, \quad t \to 0,$$

By Lemma 1.7, the operators $T(t)^\circ = T(t)|_{X^\circ}$ for $t \geq 0$ thus form a $C_0$-semigroup on $X^\circ$, endowed with $\| \cdot \|_{X^\circ}$. Its generator is denoted by $A^\circ$.

We have to show that the point spectra of the duals and sun duals are the same. Let $x^* \in D(A^\circ)$. Take $x \in D(A)$. We derive

$$\langle x, A^\circ x^* \rangle = \lim_{t \to 0} \langle x, \frac{1}{t}(T(t)^* - I)x^* \rangle = \lim_{t \to 0} \langle \frac{1}{t}(T(t) - I)x, x^* \rangle = \langle Ax, x^* \rangle,$$

$$A^\circ \subseteq A^*.$$  \hspace{1cm} (4.16)

As restrictions, the operators $A^\circ$ and $T(t)^\circ$ satisfy the inclusions

$$\sigma_p(A^\circ) \subseteq \sigma_p(A^*) \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma_p(T(t)^\circ) \subseteq \sigma_p(T(t)^*)$$

for $t \geq 0$. Let $x^* \in D(A^*o)$ and $t \in [0,1]$. Lemma 1.19 yields

$$\|T(t)^*x^* - x^*\| = \sup_{x \in X, \|x\| \leq 1} |\langle x, T(t)^*x^* - x^* \rangle| = \sup_{\|x\| \leq 1} |\langle T(t)x - x, x^* \rangle|$$

$$= \sup_{\|x\| \leq 1} \left| \left\langle A \int_0^t T(s)x ds, x^* \right\rangle \right| = \sup_{\|x\| \leq 1} \left| \left\langle \int_0^t T(s)x ds, A^*x^* \right\rangle \right|$$

$$\leq C \|A^*x^*\| t.$$

This means that $x^*$ belongs to $X^\circ$ and hence

$$D(A^*) \subseteq X^\circ.$$  \hspace{1cm} (4.17)

Let $T(t)^*x^* = e^{\lambda t}x^*$ for some $x^* \in X^* \setminus \{0\}$ and $t \geq 0$. Take $\mu \in \rho(A^*) = \rho(A)$, cf. (4.15). Note that $R(\mu, A^*) = R(\mu, A^*)$ is injective and maps $X^\circ$ into $D(A^*) \subseteq X^\circ$ and that it commutes with $T(t)^*$. Hence, $R(\mu, A^*)x^*$ is an eigenvector for $T(t)^\circ$ and the eigenvalue $e^{\lambda t}$.

Let $x^* \in D(A^*) \setminus \{0\}$ with $A^*x^* = \lambda x^*$. As above, we obtain the limit

$$\left\| \frac{1}{t}(T(t)^\circ x^* - x^*) - \lambda x^* \right\| = \sup_{x \in X, \|x\| \leq 1} \left| \left\langle A^\circ \frac{1}{t} \int_0^t T(s)x ds, x^* \right\rangle - \langle x, \lambda x^* \rangle \right|$$

$$= \sup_{\|x\| \leq 1} \left| \left\langle x, \frac{1}{t} \int_0^t T(s)x^* ds - \lambda x^* \right\rangle \right|$$

$$\leq \left\| \frac{1}{t} \int_0^t T(s)x^* ds - \lambda x^* \right\| \to 0.$$
as $t \to 0$, using $A^* x^* = \lambda x^*$ and (4.17). We have thus shown
\[
\sigma_p(A^\ominus) = \sigma_p(A^*) \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma_p(T(t)^\ominus) = \sigma_p(T(t)^*) \quad \text{for all } t \geq 0. \tag{4.18}
\]
These equalities also hold for the full spectra. For this and further information we refer to Proposition IV.2.18 and §II.2.6 of [EN].

We now easily obtain the spectral mapping theorem for the residual spectrum.

**Theorem 4.14.** Let $A$ generate the $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$. We then have
\[
\sigma_r(T(t)) \setminus \{0\} = e^{t\sigma_r(A)} \quad \text{for all } t \geq 0.
\]

**Proof.** Let $t \geq 0$. Combining (4.15), (4.18) and Theorem 4.13, we obtain
\[
\sigma_r(T(t)) \setminus \{0\} = \sigma_p(T(t)^+) \setminus \{0\} = \sigma_p(T(t)^{\ominus}) \setminus \{0\} = e^{t\sigma_p(A^\ominus)} = e^{t\sigma_p(A^*)} = e^{t\sigma_r(A)}.
\]

As a result, the spectral mapping theorem can only fail if we are not able to transport approximate eigenvectors from $T(t)$ to $A$. This can be done if the semigroup has some additional regularity, as stated in the spectral mapping theorem for eventually norm continuous semigroups. Besides analytic $C_0$-semigroups, this class includes various generators arising in mathematical biology, see e.g. Example 5.6 and the comments before Theorem 5.8.

**Theorem 4.15.** Let $A$ generate the $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ and let the map
\[
(t_0, \infty) \to \mathcal{B}(X); \quad t \mapsto T(t), \tag{4.19}
\]
be continuous (in operator norm) for some $t_0 \geq 0$. Then $T(\cdot)$ satisfies the spectral mapping theorem
\[
\sigma(T(t)) \setminus \{0\} = e^{t\sigma(A)} \quad \text{for all } t \geq 0.
\]

Assumption (4.19) is true if $T(\cdot)$ is analytic (then $t_0 = 0$) or if $T(t_0)$ is compact for some $t_0 > 0$.

**Proof.** Let $T(t_0)$ be compact. Then the closure of $T(t_0) \overline{B}_X(0,1)$ is compact. By an exercise in Functional Analysis, the map
\[
[t_0, \infty) \to \mathcal{B}(X); \quad t \mapsto T(t)x = T(t-t_0)T(t_0)x,
\]
thus is uniformly continuous for $x \in \overline{B}_X(0,1)$ and so (4.19) is true.

In view of Proposition 4.10, Theorem 4.14 and formula (4.13), it remains to show that $\sigma_{ap}(T(t)) \setminus \{0\} \subseteq e^{t\sigma_{ap}(A)}$ for all $t > 0$. To this aim, let $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$, $\tau > 0$ and $x_n \in X$ satisfy $\|x_n\| = 1$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\lambda x_n - T(\tau)x_n \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$.

We look for a number $\mu \in \sigma_{ap}(A)$ with $\lambda = e^{i\mu}$. Considering the $C_0$-semigroup $(e^{-\nu s}T(s\tau))_{s \geq 0}$ with $\lambda = e^{i\nu}$ and its generator $B = \tau A - \nu I$, see Lemma 1.18, we can assume that $\lambda = 1$, $\tau = 1$ and $\mu \in 2\pi i \mathbb{Z}$.

Fix some $k \in \mathbb{N}$ with $k > t_0$. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$. By (4.19), the map $[0,1] \to X; \quad s \mapsto T(s)T(k)x_n$, is continuous uniformly for $n$; i.e., equi-continuous. Moreover,
\[
\|T(k)x_n - x_n\| \leq \|T(k-1)(T(1)x_n - x_n)\| + \cdots + \|T(1)x_n - x_n\|
\]
tends to 0 as $n \to \infty$. This fact implies that also the functions $[0,1] \to X; \quad s \mapsto T(s)(T(k)x_n - x_n)$, are equi-continuous. Hence, the same is true for the differences $[0,1] \to X; \quad s \mapsto T(s)x_n$. 


Choose \( x_n^* \in X^* \) such that \( \| x_n^* \| \leq 1 \) and \( \langle x_n, x_n^* \rangle \geq \frac{1}{2} \) for all \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), using the Hahn-Banach theorem. Since the functions \( \varphi_n : [0, 1] \to \mathbb{C}; s \mapsto \langle T(s)x_n, x_n^* \rangle \), are equi-continuous and uniformly bounded, the Arzelà-Ascoli theorem (see Theorem 1.47 in [FA]) says that a subsequence \( (\varphi_{n_j})_j \) converges in \( C([0, 1]) \) to a function \( \varphi \). Observe that

\[
\| \varphi \|_\infty \geq |\varphi(0)| = \lim_{j \to \infty} |\varphi_{n_j}(0)| = \lim_{j \to \infty} |\langle x_{n_j}, x_{n_j}^* \rangle| \geq \frac{1}{2}
\]

showing that \( \varphi \neq 0 \). Example 3.17 of [FA] thus implies that \( \varphi \) has a nonzero Fourier coefficient; i.e., there exists an index \( m \in \mathbb{Z} \) such that for \( \mu := 2\pi i m \) we have \( \int_0^1 e^{-\mu s} \varphi(s) \, ds \neq 0 \). We now set \( z_n = \int_0^1 e^{-\mu s} T(s) x_n \, ds \). Lemma 1.19 leads to \( z_n \in D(A) \) and

\[
(\mu I - A)z_n = (I - e^{-\mu T(1)})x_n = x_n - T(1)x_n \longrightarrow 0
\]

as \( n \to \infty \). We further compute

\[
\liminf_{j \to \infty} \| z_{n_j} \| \geq \liminf_{j \to \infty} |\langle z_{n_j}, x_{n_j}^* \rangle| = \liminf_{j \to \infty} \left| \int_0^1 e^{-\mu s} \langle T(s)x_{n_j}, x_{n_j}^* \rangle \, ds \right|
\]

\[
= \left| \int_0^1 e^{-\mu s} \varphi(s) \, ds \right| > 0
\]

so that \( \mu \in \sigma_{ap}(A) \), completing the proof. \( \square \)

The above theorem yields the desired characterizations (4.10) and (4.11).

**Corollary 4.16.** Let \( A \) generate the \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( T(\cdot) \) satisfying (4.19). Then the following equivalences hold.

a) The semigroup \( T(\cdot) \) is exponentially stable if and only if \( s(A) < 0 \).

b) The semigroup \( T(\cdot) \) has an exponential dichotomy if and only if \( i\mathbb{R} \subseteq \rho(A) \).

We add three other important results on the long-time behavior of semigroups without proof, starting with Gearhart’s spectral mapping theorem. It was shown by Gearhart in 1978 for quasi-contraction semigroups and independently by Herbst (1983), Howland (1984), and Prüss (1984) for general \( C_0 \)-semigroups. It says that spectral information on \( A \) combined with resolvent estimates yield the corresponding spectra for the semigroup, provided that \( X \) is Hilbert space. For a proof we refer to Theorem 2.5.4 in [vN].

**Theorem 4.17.** Let \( A \) generate the \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( T(\cdot) \) on a Hilbert space \( X \). Let \( t > 0 \) and \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \). Then

\[
e^\lambda t \in \sigma(T(t)) \iff \forall k \in \mathbb{Z}: \lambda_k := \lambda + \frac{2\pi ik}{t} \in \sigma(A), \sup_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} \| R(\lambda_k, A) \| < \infty.
\]

We add two results on weaker decay properties, assuming that the semigroup is bounded. As in (4.5), the first one deals with classical solutions; i.e., initial values in \( D(A) \). Since one looks at estimates of \( T(t) \) in \( \mathcal{B}(X_1, X) \), one can obtain decay rates which are not exponential in contrast to convergence in \( \mathcal{B}(X) \), cf. Proposition 4.2. To obtain polynomial decay, one can allow for a corresponding increase of the resolvent along \( i\mathbb{R} \).
Theorem 4.18. Let $A$ generate the bounded $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ on a Hilbert space $X$ and let $\alpha > 0$. The following two assertions are equivalent.

a) $\|T(t)x\| \leq N t^{-1/\alpha} \|x\|_A$ for some $N > 0$ and all $t \geq 1$ and $x \in D(A)$.

b) $\sigma(A) \subseteq \mathbb{C}_-$ and $\|R(i\tau,A)\| \leq C|\tau|^\alpha$ for some $C > 0$ and all $\tau \in \mathbb{R}\setminus[-1,1]$.

Property b) and Remark 1.17 imply that $|\Im \lambda| \geq c|\Re \lambda|^{-1/\alpha}$ for all $\lambda \in \sigma(A)$ with $\Re \lambda \leq -\delta$ for some $c, \delta > 0$. The implication ‘b) $\Rightarrow$ a)’ is due to Borichev and Tomilov (see [BT] from 2010), who also constructed an example saying that it fails in an $L^1$-space. The converse implication was shown by Batty and Duyckaerts in [BD] from 2008 even for general $X$ and other rates. In this more general framework they also proved a variant of ‘b) $\Rightarrow$ a)’ with logarithmic corrections.

In the setting of the above theorem, by density one obtains strong stability of $T(\cdot)$; i.e., $T(t)x$ tends to 0 as $t \to \infty$ for all $x \in X$. But this fact is true in much greater generality, as established already in 1988 by Arendt and Batty as well as, with a different proof, by Lyubich and Vü.

Theorem 4.19. Let $A$ generate the bounded $C_0$-semigroup $T(\cdot)$ on a Banach space $X$. Assume that $\sigma(A) \cap i\mathbb{R}$ is countable and that $\sigma(A^*) \cap i\mathbb{R} = \emptyset$. (The latter is true if $\sigma(A) \cap i\mathbb{R} = \emptyset$.) Then $T(\cdot)$ strongly stable.

The proof by Lyubich and Vü can be found in Theorem V.2.21 of [EN], and we refer to Lemma V.2.20 in [EN] for the addendum. A variety of related results are discussed in [ABHN].
CHAPTER 5

Stability of positive semigroups

Evolution\(^1\) equations often describe the behavior of positive quantities, such as the concentration of a species or the distribution of mass or temperature. It is then a crucial property of the system that non-negative initial functions lead to non-negative solutions. This property of positivity has to be verified in the applications, of course, and we will see below that it implies many additional useful features of the semigroup solving the equation. To deal with positivity, we consider as state spaces only the following classes of Banach spaces \(E\) consisting of scalar-valued functions.

Standing hypothesis. In this chapter, \(E\) denotes a function space of the type \(L^p(\mu), C_0(U)\) or \(C(K)\), where \(p \in [1, \infty)\), \((S, A, \mu)\) is a \(\sigma\)-finite measure space, \(U\) is a locally compact metric space (e.g., an open subset of \(\mathbb{R}^m\)), or \(K\) is a compact metric space, respectively.

We stress that we still take \(\mathbb{C}\) as the scalar field in order to use spectral theory. Actually, we could work in the more general class of (complex) Banach lattices \(E\), but for simplicity we restrict ourselves to the above indicated setting. It suffices for the typical applications; however for certain deeper investigations one actually needs the more abstract framework. We refer to the monograph [Na-Ed] for a thorough discussion of positive \(C_0\)-semigroups in Banach lattices.

In the spaces \(E\) given by the standing hypothesis, we have the usual concept of non-negative functions \(f \geq 0\), of positive and negative parts \(f^\pm\) and domination \(f \leq g\) of real-valued functions, and of the absolute value \(|f|\). We write \(E_+ = \{f \in E \mid f \geq 0\}\) for the cone of non-negative functions, which is closed in \(E\). For all \(f, g \in E\), it holds \(||f|| = ||f||\), and \(0 \leq f \leq g\) implies that \(||f|| \leq ||g||\).

Recall from Example 3.6 that an operator \(T \in \mathcal{B}(E)\) is called positive if \(Tf \geq 0\) for every \(f \in E_+\). One then writes \(T \geq 0\). A \(C_0\)-semigroup \(T(\cdot)\) is positive if each operator \(T(t), \ t \geq 0\), is positive. We discuss a few basic properties of positive operators \(T, S \in \mathcal{B}(E)\) which are used below without further notice. First, products of positive operators are positive. Next,

\[
\text{for all } f, g \in E \text{ with } f \geq g \quad \text{we have } \quad Tf - Tg \geq 0 \iff Tf \geq Tg.
\]

For real-valued \(f\), also the image \(Tf = Tf_+ - Tf_-\) has real values. Moreover, \(Tf \leq |Tf| \leq Tf_+ + Tf_- = T|f|\). For complex-valued \(f\), we take a point \(x\) in \(\Omega \in \{S, U, K\}\). Choose a number \(\alpha\) such that \(|\alpha| = 1\) and \(|Tf(x)| = \alpha Tf(x)|\), where we fix a representative of \(Tf\) if \(E = L^p\). It follows that

\[
|Tf(x)| = \alpha Tf(x) = T(\Re(\alpha f))(x) + iT(\Im(\alpha f))(x) = T(\Re(\alpha f))(x)
\]

\(^1\)This chapter was not part of the lectures.
\[ T(|\text{Re}(\alpha f)|)(x) \leq T(|\alpha f|)(x) = T(|f|)(x). \]

Consequently,
\[ |Tf| \leq T|f| \text{ holds for all } f \in E. \]

We further write \( 0 \leq T \leq S \) if \( 0 \leq Tf \leq Sf \) for all \( f \in E_+. \) Let \( 0 \leq T \leq S \). Then \( |Tf| \leq T|f| \leq S|f| \) is true for all \( f \in E \), and hence
\[ \|T\| = \sup_{\|f\| \leq 1} \|Tf\| = \sup_{\|f\| \leq 1} \|Tf\| \leq \sup_{\|f\| \leq 1} \|Sf\| \leq \|S\|. \]

We recall from Corollary 3.25 that the semigroup is positive if and only if there exists a number \( \omega \geq \omega_0(A) \) such that \( R(\lambda, A) \geq 0 \) for all \( \lambda > \omega \). In Example 3.26 we have seen that the Dirichlet–Laplacian \( \Delta_D \) on \( \mathbb{R}^m \) with domain \( \mathcal{D}_0^p(G) \cap \mathcal{D}^{1,p}_0(G) \) generates a positive \( C_0 \)-semigroup on \( L^p(G) \) for \( p \in (1, \infty) \), where \( G = \mathbb{R}^m \) or \( G \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m \) is bounded and open with \( \partial G \subset C^2 \).

To discuss the Neumann Laplacian we need Hopf’s lemma. For \( w \in C^2(B) \cap C^2(G) \), it is a special case of the lemma in Section 6.4.2 in [Ev]. Our result can be shown in the same way using Proposition 3.1.10 of [Lu].

**Lemma 5.1.** Let \( B = B(y, \rho) \subset \mathbb{R}^m \) be an open ball and \( w \) belong to \( W^{2,p}(B) \) for all \( p \in (1, \infty) \) and satisfy \( 0 \leq \Delta w \in C(G) \). Assume that there is an \( x_0 \in \partial B \) such that \( w(x_0) > w(x) \) for all \( x \in B \). Then \( \partial_w w(x_0) > 0 \) for the outer normal \( \nu(x) = \rho^{-1}(x - y) \) of \( \partial B \).

**Example 5.2.** Let \( G \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m \) be open and bounded with boundary of class \( C^2 \), or let \( G = \mathbb{R}^m \). Set \( E = L^p(G) \) for \( p \in (1, \infty) \). The Neumann Laplacian on \( E \) is given by \( \Delta_N u = \Delta u \) on \( D(\Delta_N) = \{ u \in W^{2,p}_0(G) \mid \partial_u u = 0 \} \). One sees as in Example 2.29 that the operator \( e^{it} \Delta_N \) is dissipative on \( L^p(G) \), if \( 0 \leq |t| \leq \arccot\left(\frac{|p-2|}{2\sqrt{p}}\right) \in (0, \pi/2) \). Theorem 9.3.5 in [Kr] further implies that \( I - \Delta_N \) is surjective. Consequently, \( \Delta_N \) generates a contractive analytic \( C_0 \)-semigroup on \( E \) by Corollary 2.27.

To show positivity, let \( \lambda > 0 \) and \( 0 \leq f \in C_0(G) \). Set \( u = R(\lambda, \Delta_N)f \). Corollary 3.1.24 in [Lu] implies that \( u \) belongs to \( D(\Delta_N) \) for all \( p \in (1, \infty) \) and \( \Delta u \in C(G) \). As in Example 3.26, we see that \( u \) takes real values. Suppose there was a point \( x_0 \in G \) such that \( u(x_0) < 0 \). The function \( u \) thus has a minimum \( u(x_1) < 0 \) for some \( x_1 \in G \). We then have \( \Delta u(x_1) = \lambda u(x_1) - f(x_1) < 0 \) and so \( \Delta u(x) \leq 0 \) for all \( x \) in a neighborhood of \( x_1 \) in \( G \). If \( x_1 \in G \), Proposition 3.1.10 in [Lu] then yields \( \Delta u(x_1) \geq 0 \) which is impossible.

So all such minimina occur on \( \partial G \). Since \( \partial G \) is \( C^2 \), we can find an open ball \( B \subseteq G \) with \( \bar{B} \cap \partial G = \{ x_1 \} \) on which \( -u \) satisfies the assumptions of Lemma 5.1. Hence, \( \partial_u u(x_1) < 0 \) contradicting \( u \in D(\Delta_N) \). We have shown that \( R(\lambda, \Delta_N)f \geq 0 \) and by density the resolvent is positive. The positivity of the semigroup then follows from Corollary 3.25.

The next result collects the basic features of the spectral theory of positive semigroups. For a generator \( A \) we define two more quantities
\[
s_0(A) = \inf \{ r > s(A) \mid \sup_{\mu \in \mathbb{C}_+} \| R(\mu, A) \| < \infty \},
\]
\[
\omega_1(A) = \inf \{ \omega \in \mathbb{R} \mid \exists M_\omega \geq 1 \forall t \geq 0, \, x \in D(A) : \| T(t)x \| \leq M_\omega e^{\omega t} \| x \|_A \}.
\]
**Theorem 5.3.** Let $A$ generate the positive $C_0$–semigroup $T(\cdot)$ on $E$. Then the following assertions hold.

a) Let $\text{Re} \lambda > s(A)$ and $f \in E$. Then the improper Riemann integral

$$
\int_0^\infty e^{-\lambda t}T(t)f \, dt = R(\lambda, A)f
$$

exists. Moreover, $\|R(\lambda, A)\| \leq \|R(\text{Re} \lambda, A)\|$.  

b) $s(A) = s_0(A)$.  

c) If $\sigma(A) \neq \emptyset$, then $s(A) \in \sigma(A)$.  

d) For $\lambda \in \rho(A)$, the resolvent $R(\lambda, A)$ is positive if and only if $\lambda > s(A)$.  

e) $s(A) = \omega_1(A)$. In particular, if $s(A) < 0$, then there are $N, \delta > 0$ such that $\|T(t)x\| \leq N e^{-\delta t}\|x\|_A$ for all $x \in D(A)$ and $t \geq 0$.

**Proof.** a) For $\lambda > \omega_0(A)$, Corollary 3.25 yields that $R(\lambda, A) \geq 0$. If $\mu \in (s(A), \lambda)$ with $0 < \mu - \lambda < \|R(\lambda, A)\|^{-1}$, the Neumann series gives

$$
R(\mu, A) = \sum_{n=0}^\infty (\lambda - \mu)^n R(\lambda, A)^{n+1} \geq 0.
$$

Since $\|R(r, A)\|$ is bounded for $r \geq s(A) + \varepsilon$ and any fixed $\varepsilon > 0$, we deduce the positivity of $R(\mu, A)$ for all $\mu > s(A)$ (establishing one implication of assertion d)). Let $\mu > s(A)$, $\text{Re} \alpha > 0$, $f \in E$ and $t \geq 0$. We set

$$
V(t)f = \int_0^t e^{-\mu s}T(s)f \, ds.
$$

From Lemma 1.19 we deduce that

$$
0 \leq V(t)f = R(\mu, A)f - R(\mu, A)e^{-\mu t}T(t)f \leq R(\mu, A)f
$$

for all $f \in E_+$. Hence, $\|V(t)\| \leq \|R(\mu, A)\|$ for all $t \geq 0$, and thus the function $\mathbb{R}_+ \ni t \mapsto e^{-\alpha t}V(t)f$ is integrable. Integrating by parts, we deduce

$$
\int_0^t \alpha e^{-\alpha s}V(s)f \, ds + e^{-\alpha t}V(t)f = \int_0^t e^{-\alpha s}e^{-\mu s}T(s)f \, ds
$$

for all $f \in E$. We can now let $t \to \infty$, obtaining the integral in (5.1) with $\lambda = \mu + \alpha$ on the right-hand side. Proposition 1.21 then yields $\lambda \in \rho(A)$ and (5.1). Since we can vary $\mu > s(A)$, these results also hold for all $\text{Re} \alpha \geq 0$. It further follows that

$$
|R(\mu + \alpha, A)f| \leq \int_0^\infty e^{-(\mu + \text{Re} \alpha)t} |T(t)|f \, dt \leq \int_0^\infty e^{-\mu t} |T(t)| f \, dt = R(\mu, A)\|f\|.
$$

This inequality implies that $\|R(\mu + \alpha, A)\| \leq \|R(\mu, A)\|$, and thus the second assertion in a) is true.

b) It is clear that $s(A) \leq s_0(A)$. The converse inequality follows from a) and the fact that $\|R(r, A)\|$ is bounded for $r \geq s(A) + \varepsilon$ and any fixed $\varepsilon > 0$.

c) Assume that $\sigma(A) \neq \emptyset$. We can find $\lambda_n \in \rho(A)$ tending to $\sigma(A)$ with $\text{Re} \lambda_n > s(A) > -\infty$. Assertion a) and Theorem 1.13 in [ST] imply that

$$
\|R(\text{Re} \lambda_n, A)\| \geq \|R(\lambda_n, A)\| \geq d(\lambda_n, \sigma(A))^{-1} \to \infty.
$$
as \( n \to \infty \). If \( s(A) \in \rho(A) \), then \( R(\Re \lambda_n, A) \) would converge to \( R(s(A), A) \) leading to a contradiction. The spectral bound thus belongs to \( \sigma(A) \).

d) Let \( R(\lambda, A) \) be positive for some \( \lambda \in \rho(A) \). Take \( 0 \neq f \in E_+ \). The function \( 0 \neq u := R(\lambda, A) f \) is also non-negative and \( Au = \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{1}{t} (T(t) f - f) \) is real-valued. Hence, \( \lambda u = f + Au \) is real, so that \( \lambda \in \mathbb{R} \). Let \( \mu > \max\{\lambda, s(A)\} \).

Part a) of the proof shows that \( R(\mu, A) \geq 0 \), and thus

\[
R(\lambda, A) = R(\mu, A) + (\mu - \lambda) R(\mu, A) R(\lambda, A) \geq R(\mu, A) \geq 0.
\]

Using \( s(A) \in \sigma(A) \) and Theorem 1.13 in [ST], we deduce that

\[
\frac{1}{\mu - s(A)} \leq \frac{1}{d(\mu, \sigma(A))} \leq \|R(\mu, A)\| \leq \|R(\lambda, A)\|.
\]

If \( \lambda \leq s(A) \), the limit \( \mu \to s(A) \) would give a contradiction. Hence, d) holds.

e) Let \( \lambda > s(A) \) and \( f \in D(A) \). Assertion a) then implies that

\[
e^{-\lambda t} T(t)f = f + \int_0^t e^{-\lambda s} T(s)(A - \lambda I)f \, ds \longrightarrow f + R(\lambda, A)(A - \lambda I)f = 0
\]

as \( t \to \infty \). Hence, \( e^{-\lambda t} T(t) \) is bounded in \( B([D(A)], X) \) uniformly for \( t \geq 0 \) by the principle of uniform boundedness. This fact implies that \( \omega_1(A) \leq s(A) \).

Conversely, let \( \Re \lambda > \omega_1(A) \) and \( f \in D(A) \). Then the integral

\[
\int_0^t e^{-\lambda s} T(s) f \, ds =: R_\lambda f
\]

converges in \( E \). As in the proof of Proposition 1.21, it follows that \( R_\lambda f \in D(A) \) and \( (\lambda I - A) R_\lambda f = f \). Moreover, \( R_\lambda (\lambda I - A) f = f \) if \( f \in D(A^2) \). We denote by \( A_1 \) the restriction of \( A \) to \( X_1 = [D(A)] \) with domain \( D(A_1) = D(A^2) \). We have shown that \( \lambda \in \rho(A_1) \). Since \( A \) and \( A_1 \) are similar via the isomorphism \( R(\lambda, A) : D(A) \to D(A^2) \), we arrive at \( \lambda \in \rho(A) \); i.e., \( s(A) = \omega_1(A) \).

The next corollary immediately follows from part b) of the above theorem and Gearhart’s stability Theorem 4.5.

**Corollary 5.4.** Every generator \( A \) of a positive semigroup on \( E = L^2(\mu) \) satisfies \( s(A) = \omega_0(A) \).

**Remark 5.5.** The above corollary actually holds for all our spaces \( E \), see Section 5.3 in [ABHN], but it fails already on \( L^p \cap L^q \) by Example 4.3. For any generator \( A \), one has \( s(A) \leq \omega_1(A) \leq s_0(A) \leq \omega_0(A) \). (These inequalities follow from the proof of Theorem 5.3 e), Proposition 5.1.6 and Theorem 5.1.7 in [ABHN], and Proposition 1.21.) Hence, in Theorem 5.3 assertion e) follows directly from b) thanks to the (more difficult) general result in [ABHN], which is due to Weis and Wrobel. The positive semigroup in Example 4.3 satisfies \( s_0(A) < \omega_0(A) \), see Example 5.1.11 in [ABHN]. Moreover, there are (non positive) semigroups on Banach spaces \( X \) such that \( s(A) < \omega_1(A) < s_0(A) \), see Example 5.1.10 in [ABHN].

As an application we look at a cell division problem.

**Example 5.6.** Let \( \int_a^b u(t, s) \, ds \) be the number of cells of a certain species at time \( t \geq 0 \) of size \( s \in [a, b] \). We make the following assumptions on this species.
Each cell grows linearly with time at (normalized) velocity 1.

Cells of size \( s \geq \alpha > 0 \) divide with per capita rate \( b(s) \geq 0 \) in two daughter cells of equal size, where \( b = 0 \) on \([1, \infty)\) and on \([\alpha/2, \alpha]\).

Cells of size \( s \) die with per capita rate \( \mu(s) \geq 0 \).

The functions \( b \neq 0 \) and \( \mu \) are continuous, and \( \alpha > 1/2 \).

There are no cells at size \( \alpha/2 \).

It is just a normalization that the cells divide up size \( s = 1 \). The assumptions of linear growth and that \( \alpha > 1/2 \) are made for simplicity, see [GN] for the general case. The assumptions on \( b \) indicate that the interesting cell sizes belong to \( J = [\alpha/2, 1] \) (for others one only has growth and death), so that we choose as state space \( E = L^1(J) \). Hence, the norm \( \|u(t)\|_1 \) equals the number of (relevant) cells at time \( t \), if \( u \geq 0 \). It can be shown that under the above assumptions smooth cell size distributions \( u \) satisfy the equations

\[
\begin{align*}
\partial_t u(t, s) &= -\partial_s u(t, s) - \mu(s)u(t, s) - b(s)u(t, s) + 4b(2s)u(t, 2s), \quad t \geq 0, \ s \in J, \\
u(t, \frac{\alpha}{2}) &= 0, \quad t \geq 0, \\
u(0, s) &= u_0(s), \quad s \in J.
\end{align*}
\]

(5.2)

Note that \( b(2s) = 0 \) for \( s \geq 1/2 \). For such \( s \) we put \( v(2s) := 0 \) for any function \( v \) on \( J \). We take \( 0 \leq u_0 \in D(A) := \{v \in W^{1,1}(J) \mid v(\alpha/2) = 0\} \) and define

\[
Av = -v' - \mu v - bv + Bv, \quad Bv(s) = 4b(2s)v(2s),
\]

(5.3)

for \( v \in D(A) \), respectively \( v \in E \) and \( s \in J \). Observe that \( B \) is a bounded (and positive) operator on \( E \) because

\[
\|Bv\|_1 \leq 4\|b\|_\infty \int_{\alpha/2}^{1/2} |v(2s)| \, ds \leq 2\|b\|_\infty \|v\|_1.
\]

Since \( -\frac{d}{ds} \) with domain \( D(A) \) generates a positive \( C_0 \)-semigroup on \( E \) (the nilpotent translations), Example 3.6 shows that also \( A \) generates a positive \( C_0 \)-semigroup \( T(\cdot) \) on \( E \). It is clear that the non-negative map \( u(t, s) = (T(t)u_0)(s) \) with \( t \geq 0 \) and \( s \in J \) belongs to \( C^1(\mathbb{R}_+, E) \cap C(\mathbb{R}_+, W^{1,1}(J)) \) and satisfies the system (5.2), where the first line holds for a.e. \( s \in J \). On the other hand, each solution \( u \in C^1(\mathbb{R}_+, E) \cap C(\mathbb{R}_+, W^{1,1}(J)) \) of (5.2) is given by \( T(\cdot) \).

In the above example the embedding \( D(A) \hookrightarrow E \) is compact due to Theorem 3.29 in [ST]. Therefore the resolvent of \( A \) is compact and \( \sigma(A) \) consists of eigenvalues only, see Remark 2.14 and Theorem 2.16 of [ST]. We can even determine the eigenvalues by the zeros of a holomorphic function \( \xi \). (The assumption \( \alpha > \frac{1}{2} \) is only needed to obtain the simple formula of \( \xi \) below.)

**Lemma 5.7.** Let \( A \) be given by (5.3). Then a number \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \) belongs to \( \sigma(A) \) if and only if

\[
0 = \xi(\lambda) := -1 + \int_{\alpha/2}^{1/2} 4b(2\sigma) \exp \left( -\int_\sigma^{2\sigma} (\lambda + \mu(\tau) + b(\tau)) \, d\tau \right) \, d\sigma.
\]

**Proof.** As noted above, we have \( \sigma(A) = \sigma_p(A) \). Hence, \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \) belongs to \( \sigma(A) \) if and only if there is a map \( 0 \neq v \in D(A) \) with \( \lambda v = v' \). Equivalently,
0 \neq v \in W^{1,1}(J) \text{ satisfies }
\begin{align*}
v'(s) &= -(\lambda + b(s) + \mu(s))v(s), \quad 1/2 \leq s \leq 1, \\
v'(s) &= -(\lambda + b(s) + \mu(s))v(s) + 4b(2s)v(2s), \quad \alpha/2 \leq s < 1/2, \\
v(\alpha/2) &= 0.
\end{align*}

The differential equations are only fulfilled by the function given by
\begin{align*}
v(s) &= c \exp \left( \int_s^1 (\lambda + b(\sigma) + \mu(\sigma)) \, d\sigma \right), \quad \frac{1}{2} \leq s \leq 1, \\
v(s) &= c \exp \left( \int_s^1 (\lambda + b(\sigma) + \mu(\sigma)) \, d\sigma \right) \\
&\quad \cdot \left[ 1 - \int_s^{1/2} 4b(2\sigma) \exp \left( - \int_{\sigma}^{2\sigma} (\lambda + \mu(\tau) + b(\tau)) \, d\tau \right) \, d\sigma \right], \quad \frac{\alpha}{2} \leq s < \frac{1}{2},
\end{align*}
for any constant $c \neq 0$. Clearly, this map $v$ belongs to $W^{1,1}(J)$, and it satisfies $v(\alpha/2) = 0$ if and only if $\xi(\lambda) = 0$. \hfill \Box

Theorem 5.3 shows that $\omega_1(A) = s(A)$, and Remark 5.5 even yields $\omega_0(A) = s(A)$. In Proposition VI.1.4 of [EN] it is further shown that $t \mapsto T(t)$ is continuous in operator norm for $t > 1 - \frac{\alpha}{2}$. (Here one uses the nilpotency of the semigroup generated by $A_0 := A - B$ and the Dyson–Phillips series (3.7) for $A = A_0 + B$.) Therefore the spectral mapping theorem $\sigma(T(t)) = e^{t \sigma(A)} \setminus \{0\}$ is true implying again $\omega_0(A) = s(A)$, see Theorem 4.9 and Corollary 4.16. Positivity even yields a very simple criterion for $\omega_0(A) = s(A) < 0$.

**Theorem 5.8.** The semigroup generated by $A$ from (5.3) is exponentially stable on $E$ if and only if
\[ \xi(0) = -1 + \int_{\alpha/2}^{1/2} 4b(2\sigma) \exp \left( - \int_{\sigma}^{2\sigma} (\mu(\tau) + b(\tau)) \, d\tau \right) \, d\sigma < 0. \]

In particular, there are constants $N, \delta > 0$ such that $\|u(t)\|_1 \leq Ne^{-\delta t} \|u_0\|_1$ for all $t \geq 0$ and all solutions $u \in C^1(\mathbb{R}_+, E) \cap C(\mathbb{R}_+, W^{1,1}(J))$ of (5.2).

**Proof.** In view of Lemma 5.7 and the discussion above the statement of the theorem, we have to show that all zeros of $\xi$ have strictly negative real parts. To characterize this property, we use the positivity of the semigroup in a crucial way. Theorem 5.3 says that $s(A) \in \sigma(A)$. Thus $\omega_0(A) < 0$ if and only if all real zeros of $\xi$ are strictly negative. On $\mathbb{R}$, the function $\xi$ is continuous and strictly decreasing from $\infty$ to $-1$. Consequently, $\xi$ has exactly one real zero, which is strictly negative if and only if $\xi(0) < 0$. \hfill \Box
Bibliography


